

CLARENDON PRESS SERIES

AN ELEMENTARY

BY

JOHN BARROW ALLEN, M.A.

LATE SCHOLAR OF NEW COLLEGE, OXFORD

AUTHOR OF 'RUDIMENTA LATINA,' 'A FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK'

'A SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK,' &c., &c.

NEW EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1907

भारती-भवन पुस्तकालय

प्रयाग

क्रमिक संख्या 10330

विभाग

400/10

Clarendon Press Series

ELEMENTARY
LATIN GRAMMAR

J. BARROW ALLEN



HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD
LONDON, EDINBURGH
NEW YORK AND TORONTO

भा

क्रमि

विभ

OXFORD

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART, M.A.

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THIS Grammar is intended to give such information as is necessary for starting a learner in Latin. The troublesome nomenclature common to many School Grammars is as far as possible avoided; and a Short Catechism of Syntax takes the place of the usual Latin Rules.

In the treatment of Latin Accidence the beaten tracks pointed out by immemorial usage have been generally adhered to. The principal change is the subdivision of the Perfect into two separate Tenses, conformably to its twofold usage, (*a*) as a Present Past, (*b*) as a Simple Past. This alteration will compel every boy who meets with a Perfect to stop, if only as part of his parsing lesson, and reflect which Tense is meant. It also enables us to group the Tenses in the paradigm under the heads of Primary and Historic, a distinction important for boys to remember.

The principle of teaching by frequent repetition is adhered to throughout. A special aim of the work has been to impart a practical acquaintance with Latin Syntax by means of classified examples rather than a multitude of rules. All or nearly all the possible meanings of each Tense are given once at least with the paradigm of every Verb. To each Conjugation notes are appended explanatory of certain difficulties; among them are included short rules for the translation of the Accusative and Infinitive, and Ablative Absolute.

The Author's best thanks are due to his friends, Henry St. John Reade, Head Master of the Godolphin School, Hammersmith, and Michael Seymour Forster, Head Master

भा

क्रमि

विभ

of Oswestry Grammar School, who have revised the proof sheets and offered many valuable suggestions. He has also to express his obligations to many of the School Manuals now in use, to which he is indebted for hints on several points of detail. A few rules have been quoted *verbatim*, and acknowledged in their proper place.

Corrections and suggestions of improvements in the work will be thankfully received.

BIRMINGHAM, *June*, 1874.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE demand for a Second Edition has furnished an opportunity of making some alterations and additions which were much needed in the Syntax and Appendix. The book is now fitted for use in all Forms below the highest in Classical Schools, and the constant references made to higher authorities will, if attended to, prepare for the transition to Madvig, Roby, the Public Schools Latin Grammar, &c.; whilst for Middle Class Schools, where the standard of reading does not go beyond that of the University Local Examinations, no higher work will be needed.

The Author is indebted for many useful hints to J. Pryce-Jones, Esq., Grove Park School, Wrexham, and the Rev. C. G. Gepp, late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford; also, for a masterly and critical examination of the proof sheets, to the Rev. W. F. Moulton, D.D., Head Master of the Wesleyan School, Cambridge.

CAMBRIDGE, *December*, 1877.

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION.

THE revision of a school manual which has enjoyed a life of more than twenty years, with constantly increasing circulation, requires at least an explanation, if not an apology. All practical teachers know, and few, perhaps, in a greater degree than myself, the exasperation created in a school-master's mind when some elementary book, which has been placed in the hands of a class, is superseded in twelve months' time by a new edition flatly contradicting many of the facts given in the earlier issue, to say nothing of alterations in paging and sections, and the transference of matter from one portion of the work to another. For this reason I have, during all these years, determined to let well alone, and to refrain from tinkering. In departing at last from my resolve, I beg to assure the teachers who use this book that, though some needful and, I hope, useful alterations and additions have been made, nothing of any importance contained in the earlier issues has been contradicted, and scarcely a page or section has been altered in a way likely to cause the smallest confusion. The principal novelties in the present edition are the following:—(1) *Ictus* has been substituted for *Gradus* as the specimen noun of the Fourth Declension. Considering that quite nine-tenths of the words belonging to this declension are verbal nouns in *-tus* or *-sus*, I do not think that this innovation stands in need of much apology. (2) On page 73, the compounds of *fero* are inserted, showing the various assimilations of consonants in the principal parts of the verb. This is an addition

which has long been urged upon me by correspondents. (3) In the classification of uses of the Dative Case I have ventured (p. 93) to make two additions to the list. It has always struck me that our leading grammarians have not explained the Dative in such a way as to be sufficiently helpful either to the humble teacher or to the inquiring pupil. We are taught that the case is represented by the prepositions 'to' and 'for,' and although the Dative is said to follow words indicating not only 'nearness' but 'remoteness,' while the phrase 'Dative of the Possessor' is not unknown, though almost invariably restricted to the use of *sum* with a Dative, in the sense of 'to have,' this does not render self-evident to a boy the fact that the prepositions 'of' and 'from' are constantly required for a proper translation of the case. I trust, therefore, that divisions (c) and (d) of § 117, supplemented by §§ 249, 250, will not be thought a presumptuous innovation on hitherto existing classifications. (4) On page 104, one of the two previously existing sections devoted to the rule for Sequence of Tenses has been cleared away to make room for an article summarizing the constructions of the conjunction *dum*. (5) In recasting § 158 (a) I have invaded that favourite hunting-ground of the examiners, the stems of the 3rd Declension, in the hope of enabling their unfortunate quarry to emerge from the ordeal successfully. The old list (pp. 123-125) contained eighty-eight varieties of stem, and although the actual number of varieties is not, perhaps, much increased, I think considerable help should be afforded by the largely augmented number of specimen words, and by the classifications and more or less comprehensive rules introduced, where possible, e.g., the hint that nouns in *-is*, when not included in the ten exceptions given in the foot-note, may safely be assumed to follow the declension of *avis*, as far as the genitive case is concerned, the

rules given for the genitive of nouns derived from *sedeo*, *capio*, and *caput*, &c. (6) Lastly, I have added an Index of Subjects and an Index of Latin Words. A caution is necessary with reference to the latter of these. A complete list of all the many thousands of words contained in the volume would have greatly increased its size without much compensating advantage. For the most part, therefore, only such words are included as have peculiarities of inflexion or construction, while words occurring in tabulated lists, e.g., the Irregular Verbs (pp. 105-117), the Genders of Nouns (pp. 118-121), the Stems of the 3rd Declension (pp. 123-125), the Numerals (pp. 133-137), the Terminations of Derived Nouns (pp. 138-141), and the words illustrated under the Laws of Quantity, have only rarely received notice. Any word belonging to the above lists can be found without difficulty by reference to the Index of Subjects. The only exceptions to this practice are in the case of, (a), Verbs which show weakened vowels, or otherwise variant forms, in their compounds, and, (b), words which require to be noticed owing to peculiarity of inflexion or construction, and which also appear elsewhere in one or more of the tabulated lists. In such case, all the references are given. Thus, *carbasus* has to be noticed as a Heterogeneous Noun, and it is also a Noun of exceptional gender; both references are therefore given, without any addition being made to the lines of print.

I have to express my hearty thanks to the many correspondents who have from time to time furnished me with valuable hints and corrections, and to invite a continuance of them in the future.

JOHN BARROW ALLEN.

11 WINCHENDON ROAD,
FULHAM, S.W.
May, 1898.

7

系
信

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Alphabet and Parts of Speech	1
The Noun	2
Substantives	3
The First Declension	3
The Second Declension	4
The Third Declension	6
The Fourth Declension	8
The Fifth Declension	9
Adjectives	9
Comparison of Adjectives	13
Pronouns	16
The Verb	18
The Verb 'Sum'	20
First Conjugation, Active Voice	26
Second Conjugation, Active Voice	30
Third Conjugation, Active Voice	34
Fourth Conjugation, Active Voice	38
First Conjugation, Passive Voice	42
Second Conjugation, Passive Voice	46
Third Conjugation, Passive Voice	50
Fourth Conjugation, Passive Voice	54
Comparative Table of the Four Conjugations	58
Conjugation of a Deponent Verb	62
Comparative Table of Tenses in Greek, Latin, French, &c.	67
Conjugation of the Anomalous Verbs	68
Interrogative Forms of the Verb	74
Notes on the Conjugations	75
Defective and other Verbs	78
Particles	81
Catechism of Syntax	84
APPENDIX—	
Table of Verbs	105
Rules of Gender	113

	PAGE
Notes on the Declensions	122
Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs	133
Table of Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns	137
Terminations of Derived Nouns	138
The Roman Calendar	141
Roman weights and money	143
Abbreviations	144
Explanation of Grammatical Terms	145
Laws of Quantity	149
Parsing Forms	151
Supplementary Rules and Examples	153
Conditional or Hypothetical Sentences	192
Pronunciation of Latin	193
Index of Subjects	195
Index of Latin Words	203

By the same Author.

RUDIMENTA LATINA, containing Accidence and Elementary Exercises, in one volume. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s.

A FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. Eighth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

A SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo, cloth, 3s. 6d.

A Key to First and Second Latin Exercise Books, in one volume, price 5s. net. Supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.

OXFORD: CLARENDON PRESS.

LATIN GRAMMAR.

ALPHABET AND PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. **Alphabet.** The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, without W. For the pronunciation, see § 396.

§ 2. **Divisions of Letters.** The letters are divided into

(1) Vowels: a, e, i, o, u, y.

(2) Consonants: the remaining letters.

§ 3. **Diphthongs.** These are, ae (æ), oe (œ), and au¹.

§ 4. **Quantity of Syllables.** Syllables in Latin always have a certain *quantity*,—that is, they are either long, short, or doubtful. The sign — indicates a long, ∪ a short, and ∞ a doubtful syllable.

§ 5. **Parts of Speech.** There are eight Parts of Speech, namely, the Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, Pro-noun, Verb, Ad-verb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

NOTE.—These eight Parts of Speech are sometimes put under three heads, namely—(1) The Noun, including Noun-Substantive, Noun-Adjective, and Pronoun; (2) The Verb; (3) The Particle, including Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection.

The Noun-Substantive is the name of any *person* or *thing*, as, *magister*, *a master*, *mensa*, *a table*.

The Noun-Adjective expresses the *quality* of a person or thing, as, *bonus*, *good*, *albus*, *white*.

¹ ei, eu, and ui are found as diphthongs in Interjections, as *hei*, *heu*; and in a few other words as *neuter*, *huic*, *cui*, etc.

The Pro-noun is used *instead of* a Substantive or Adjective, as, *ille, he; meus, my.*

The Verb expresses an *action*, as, *amo, I love; or a condition*, as, *amor, I am loved.*

The Ad-verb is *added to* a Verb or Adjective, and shews *how, when, or where*, as *valde bonus, very good; scripsit heri, he wrote yesterday; huc veni, come hither.*

The Preposition is *put before* Nouns, to shew that they are to be joined to Verbs, or sometimes to Nouns, as, *venit ad urbem, he comes to the city; lupus inter oves, a wolf among sheep.*

The Conjunction *joins together* words or sentences, as, *Romulus et Remus, Romulus and Remus.*

The Interjection is an exclamation, as, *heu, alas!*

§ 6. **The Article.** There is no Article, *a, an, or the*, in Latin. Thus *bellum* may mean *war, a war, or the war.*

THE NOUN.

§ 7. **Number.** There are two Numbers, the Singular, which speaks of one, as, *magister, a master; the Plural*, which speaks of more than one, as, *magistri, masters.*

§ 8. **Gender.** There are three Genders, (1) the Masculine, as, *vir, a man; (2) the Feminine*, as, *mulier, a woman; and (3) the Neuter*, as, *cubile, a bed.* Nouns which are both Masculine and Feminine are called Common, as, *canis, a dog.* But in Latin names of *things* are not all Neuter (as in English) many being Masculine, as, *murus, a wall*, and many Feminine, as, *mensa, a table.* (For the General and Special Rules of Gender, see pp. 118-121.)

§ 9. **Cases.** There are six Cases, the Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. In English these Cases are distinguished by means of prepositions, as,

Genitive, *of* a man, Dative, *to* a man, Ablative, *by, with, or from* a man. But in Latin they are distinguished *by altering the last syllable*, as will be explained directly under *Stem* and *Flexion*.

§ 10. **Oblique Cases.** The Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative are called Oblique Cases.

§ 11. **Stem.** The Stem is *that part of a Noun which remains unaltered* in all the Cases and in both Numbers; as, *mūr* in *mūr-us*, *a wall*; *mur-o*, *to a wall*; *mur-i*, *walls*; *vall* in *vall-is*, *a valley*; *vall-i*, *to a valley*; *vall-es*, *valleys*.

§ 12. **Flexion.** Flexions (also called Inflexions or Terminations) are *the Syllables added to the Stem* for the purpose of distinguishing the different Cases and Numbers.

NOTE.—This will be best understood by looking at *mens-a* or any other Noun in the declensions that immediately follow.

§ 13. **Declension.** Declensions are *the different ways in which Nouns are declined*, that is, the different ways in which their Cases and Numbers are formed by means of adding different Flexions to the Stem.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 14. **The five Declensions.** Of Substantives there are five Declensions, which are known by the endings of their Genitive Case Singular. The 1st Declension has Gen. Sing. in *-ae*; the 2nd in *-i*; the 3rd in *-is*; the 4th in *-ūs*; the 5th in *-ei*.

§ 15. **THE FIRST DECLENSION.**

Nominative. The Nominative Case ends in *-ā*.

Gender. Feminine; except a few names of men, as, *Publicola*, *Publicola*, or designations of men, as, *poeta*, *a poet*, which are masculine.

भ
क्र
वि

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. Mensă, <i>a table.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>tables.</i>
Voc. Mens-ă, <i>O table.</i>	Mens-ae, <i>O tables.</i>
Acc. Mens-am, <i>a table.</i>	Mens-ās, <i>tables.</i>
Gen. Mens-ae, <i>of a table.</i>	Mens-arum, <i>of tables.</i>
Dat. Mens-ae, <i>to or for a table.</i>	Mens-is, <i>to or for tables.</i>
Abl. Mens-ā, <i>by, with, or from a table.</i>	Mens-is, <i>by, with, or from tables.</i>

§ 16. THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative ends in -ūs, -ēr, and -um.

Gender. -us and -er generally Masculine, -um Neuter.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. Mūrūs, <i>a wall.</i>	Mur-i, <i>walls.</i>
Voc. Mur-ē, <i>O wall.</i>	Mur-i, <i>O walls.</i>
Acc. Mur-um, <i>a wall.</i>	Mur-ōs, <i>walls.</i>
Gen. Mur-i, <i>of a wall.</i>	Mur-orum, <i>of walls.</i>
Dat. Mur-o, <i>to or for a wall.</i>	Mur-is, <i>to or for walls.</i>
Abl. Mur-o, <i>by, with, or from a wall.</i>	Mur-is, <i>by, with, or from walls.</i>

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom. Māgistēr, <i>a master.</i>	Magistr-i, <i>masters.</i>
Voc. Magistēr, <i>O master.</i>	Magistr-i, <i>O masters.</i>
Acc. Magistr-um, <i>a master.</i>	Magistr-os, <i>masters.</i>
Gen. Magistr-i, <i>a master's, or of a master.</i>	Magistr-orum, <i>of masters.</i>
Dat. Magistr-o, <i>to or for a master.</i>	Magistr-is, <i>to or for masters.</i>
Abl. Magistr-o, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Magistr-is, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>

Note. The Ablative of Nouns denoting a *living thing*, as, magister, puer, judex, etc., usually requires a Preposition, as, a (ab), *by, from, cum, with, etc.*

Some Nouns in -er preserve the *e* before -r through all the cases, instead of dropping it, as, *puer, a boy*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Puēr, a boy.</i>	<i>Puer-i, boys.</i>
Voc. <i>Puēr, O boy.</i>	<i>Puer-i, O boys.</i>
Acc. <i>Puer-um, a boy.</i>	<i>Puer-os, boys.</i>
Gen. <i>Puer-i, a boy's, or of a boy.</i>	<i>Puer-orum, of boys.</i>
Dat. <i>Puer-o, to or for a boy.</i>	<i>Puer-is, to or for boys.</i>
Abl. <i>Puer-o¹, by, with, or from a boy.</i>	<i>Puer-is¹, by, with, or from boys.</i>

Like 'puer' are declined,—gener, socer, vesper, Liber, and compounds of gero, *I carry*, and fero, *I bear*, as, *armiger*².

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.V.A. <i>Bellum, war, or O war.</i>	<i>Bell-ā, wars, or O wars.</i>
Gen. <i>Bell-i, of war.</i>	<i>Bell-orum, of wars.</i>
Dat. <i>Bell-o, to or for war.</i>	<i>Bell-is, to or for wars.</i>
Abl. <i>Bell-o, by, with, or from war.</i>	<i>Bell-is, by, with, or from wars.</i>

Note on Neuter Nouns. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases of all Neuter Nouns are the same in each number, and in the Plural they always end in -ā.

Note on the Genitive of the Second Declension. Nouns in -ius, -ium often contract -ii into -i in the Genitive, as, *filius, a son*, Gen. *fili* or *fili*; *ingenium, ability*, Gen. *ingenii, or ingēni*.

Note on the Vocative of the Second Declension. *Filius, a son*, and names of men ending in -ius, make -i in the Vocative; as, *filius*, Voc. *fili, O son*; *Virgilius, Virgil*, Voc. *Virgili, O Virgil*. *Deus, God*, has Voc. *Deus* (not *Dee*), *O God*.

¹ A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. See § 16, Note.

² *Son-in-law, father-in-law, evening, Bacchus, armour-bearer.*

§ 17.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Nominative and Gender. The Nominative ends variously. The Gender is also various. (For terminations of the Nominative, and rules of Gender, see pp. 119-121.)

Divisions. Nouns of this Declension have two divisions, namely, (1) Nouns which have **-um** in the Genitive Plural; (2) Nouns which have **-ium** in the Genitive Plural.

Nouns *increasing* (i. e. having more Syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative) make **-um** in the Gen. Pl.; Nouns *not increasing* make **-ium**. For the exceptions see p. 126.

Nouns in **-um**.1. *Masculine or Feminine.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.V.	Jūdex, a judge, or O judge.	Judic-ēs, judges, or O judges.
Acc.	Judic-em, a judge.	Judic-ēs, judges.
Gen.	Judic-īs, of a judge.	Judic-um, of judges.
Dat.	Judic-i, to or for a judge.	Judic-ibūs, to or for judges.
Abl.	Judic-ē ¹ , by, with, or from a judge.	Judic-ibūs ¹ , by, with, or from judges.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Law.</i>	<i>Lion.</i>	<i>Flower.</i>	<i>Soldier.</i>
N.V.	Lex.	Leo.	Flos.	Milēs.
Acc.	Lēg-em.	Leōn-em.	Flōr-em.	Milit-em.
Gen.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.	„ -īs.
Dat.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.
Abl.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.	„ -ē.

PLURAL.

N.V.A.	Leg-ēs.	Leōn-ēs.	Flor-ēs.	Milit-ēs.
Gen.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.
Dat. Abl.	„ -ibūs.	„ -ibūs.	„ -ibūs.	„ -ibūs.

¹ A Preposition must be used with the Latin word. See § 16, Note.

2. *Neuter.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.A.V.	Öpüs, <i>a work</i> , or <i>O work</i> .	Oper-ä, <i>works</i> , or <i>O works</i> .
Gen.	Opër-ïs, <i>of a work</i> .	Oper-um, <i>of works</i> .
Dat.	Oper-i, <i>to</i> or <i>for a work</i> .	Oper-ibüs, <i>to</i> or <i>for works</i> .
Abl.	Oper-ë, <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from</i> <i>a work</i> .	Oper-ibüs, <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from</i> <i>works</i> .

SINGULAR.

	<i>Shore.</i>	<i>Song.</i>	<i>Head.</i>	<i>Journey.</i>
N.V.A.	Litüs	Carmën.	Căpüt.	İtër.
Gen.	Litör-ïs.	Carmîn-ïs.	Capît-ïs.	Itinër-ïs.
Dat.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.	„ -i.
Abl.	„ -ë.	„ -ë.	„ -ë.	„ -ë.

PLURAL.

N.V.A.	Litör-ä.	Carmîn-ä.	Capît-ä.	Itinër-ä.
Gen.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.	„ -um.
Dat. Abl.	„ -ibüs.	„ -ibüs.	„ -ibüs.	„ -ibüs.

Nouns in -ium.

1. *Masculine or Feminine.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.V.	Vallïs, <i>a valley</i> , or <i>O valley</i> .	Vall-ës, <i>valleys</i> , or <i>O valleys</i> .
Acc.	Vall-em, <i>a valley</i> .	Vall-ës, or -ïs, <i>valleys</i> .
Gen.	Vall-ïs, <i>of a valley</i> .	Vall-ium, <i>of valleys</i> .
Dat.	Vall-i, <i>to</i> or <i>for a valley</i> .	Vall-ibüs, <i>to</i> or <i>for valleys</i> .
Abl.	Vall-ë, <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from</i> <i>a valley</i> .	Vall-ibüs, <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , or <i>from</i> <i>valleys</i> .

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.V. Nübēs, <i>a cloud</i> , or <i>O cloud</i> .	Nub-ēs, <i>clouds</i> , or <i>O clouds</i> .
Acc. Nub-em, <i>a cloud</i> .	Nub-ēs, or -īs, <i>clouds</i> .
Gen. Nub-īs, <i>of a cloud</i> .	Nub-ium, <i>of clouds</i> .
Dat. Nub-i, <i>to or for a cloud</i> .	Nub-ībūs, <i>to or for clouds</i> .
Abl. Nub-ē, <i>by, with, or from a cloud</i> .	Nub-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from clouds</i> .

2. Neuter.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.A.V. Mārē, <i>the sea</i> , or <i>O sea</i> .	Mar-iā, <i>seas</i> , or <i>O seas</i> .
Gen. Mar-īs, <i>of the sea</i> .	Mar-ium, <i>of seas</i> .
Dat. Mar-i, <i>to or for the sea</i> .	Mar-ībūs, <i>to or for seas</i> .
Abl. Mar-i, <i>by, with, or from the sea</i> .	Mar-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from seas</i> .

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.A.V. Cūbilē, <i>a bed</i> , or <i>O bed</i> .	Cubil-iā, <i>beds</i> , or <i>O beds</i> .
Gen. Cubil-īs, <i>of a bed</i> .	Cubil-ium, <i>of beds</i> .
Dat. Cubil-i, <i>to or for a bed</i> .	Cubil-ībūs, <i>to or for beds</i> .
Abl. Cubil-i, <i>by, with, or from a bed</i> .	Cubil-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from beds</i> .

§ 18. THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative ends in -ūs and -u.

Gender. -us generally Masculine, -u Neuter.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.V. Ictūs, <i>a blow</i> , or <i>O blow</i> .	Ict-ūs, <i>blows</i> , or <i>O blows</i> .
Acc. Ict-um, <i>a blow</i> .	Ict-ūs, <i>blows</i> .
Gen. Ict-ūs, <i>of a blow</i> .	Ict-uum, <i>of blows</i> .
Dat. Ict-ui or -u, <i>to or for a blow</i> .	Ict-ībūs, <i>to or for blows</i> .
Abl. Ict-u, <i>by, with, or from a blow</i> .	Ict-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from blows</i> .

Note 1. Verbal Nouns in -tus and -sus are declined like ictus.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.A. Gēnu, *a knee.*Gen-uă, *knees.*Voc. Genu, *O knee.*Gen-uă, *O knees.*Gen. Gen-ūs, *of a knee.*Gen-uum, *of knees.*D.A. Gen-u, *to, for, by, with, or from a knee.*Gen-ibūs, *to, for, by, with, or from knees.*

Note 2. The Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Fourth Declension are sometimes written -ūbus instead of -ibus, as, genūbus.

§ 19.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nominative. The Nominative ends in -es.

Gender. Feminine, except dies, *a day*, which is Common in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N.V. Diēs, *a day, or O day.*Di-ēs, *days, or O days.*Acc. Di-em, *a day.*Di-ēs, *days.*Gen. Di-ēi, *of a day.*Di-ērum, *of days.*Dat. Di-ei, *to or for a day.*Di-ēbūs, *to or for days.*Abl. Di-ē, *by, with, or from a day.*Di-ēbūs, *by, &c., days.*

§ 20.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are divided into two classes, the First Class having flexions like those of the First and Second Declensions, and the Second Class like those of the Third Declension, of Nouns Substantive.

§ 21. **Adjectives of the First Class.** Adjectives of the First Class have three terminations to each Case, denoting the Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter Gender, as, bonus, bona, bonum, *good*; niger, nigra, nigrum, *black*. The Masculine and Neuter flexions are like those of the Second Declension of Substantives, the Feminine like those of the First.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Bönüs,	-ă,	-um.	Bon-i,	-ae,	-ă.
Voc. Bon-ě,	-ă,	-um.			
Acc. Bon-um,	-am,	-um.	Bon-os,	-as,	-ă.
Gen. Bon-i,	-ae,	-i.	Bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Bon-o,	-ae,	-o.	Bon-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Bon-o,	-ă,	-o.			

Note. Adjectives cannot stand alone but must always belong to some Substantive, as, *bonus rex*, a *good king*. When the Substantive is omitted, the word *man* must be understood with Masculine Adjectives, *woman* with Feminines, and *thing* with Neuters; as, *boni*, *good men*; *bonă*, *good things*, *goods*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V. Nigr̃,	nigr-ă,	nigr-um.	Nigr-i,	-ae,	-ă.
Acc. Nigr-um,	-am,	-um.	Nigr-os,	-as,	-ă.
Gen. Nigr-i,	-ae,	-i.	Nigr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Nigr-o,	-ae,	-o.	Nigr-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Nigr-o,	-ă,	-o.			

Note. Some Adjectives in *-er* preserve the *e* throughout, like *puer*, as *tener*, *tenera*, *tenerum*, *tender*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.V. Teñr,	-ă,	-um.	Tener-i,	-ae,	-ă.
Acc. Tener-um,	-am,	-um.	Tener-os,	-as,	-ă.
Gen. Tener-i,	-ae,	-i.	Tener-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Tener-o,	-ae,	-o.	Tener-is (of all Genders).		
Abl. Tener-o,	-ă,	-o.			

Like 'tener' are declined—*lacer*, *liber*, *asper*, *miser*, *satur*; compounds of *gero* and *fero*, as *corniger*, *frugifer*; and sometimes *dexter*¹.

¹ *Torn, free, rough, miserable, full of food; horn-bearing, fruit-bearing; on the right hand.*

§ 22. **Adjectives of the Second Class.** Adjectives of the Second Class are called Adjectives of Two Terminations, and have flexions like those of the 3rd Decl. of Substantives; as, *tristis, gloomy; melior, better; felix, happy; ingens, vast.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V. <i>Tristis</i> ,	<i>tristě.</i> }	<i>Trist-ēs</i> ,	<i>trist-iā.</i>
Acc. <i>Trist-em</i> ,	<i>tristě.</i> }		
Gen. <i>Trist-īs.</i>		<i>Trist-ium.</i>	
Dat. <i>Trist-i.</i>	}	<i>Trist-ibus.</i>	
Abl. <i>Trist-i.</i>			
N.V. <i>Meliör</i> ,	<i>meliūs.</i> }	<i>Meliör-ēs</i> ,	<i>melior-ā.</i>
Acc. <i>Meliör-em</i> ,	<i>meliūs.</i> }		
Gen. <i>Meliör-īs.</i>		<i>Meliör-um.</i>	
Dat. <i>Meliör-i.</i>	}	<i>Meliör-ibus.</i>	
Abl. <i>Meliör-ě.</i>			
N.V. <i>Felix.</i>	}	<i>Felic-ēs</i> ,	<i>felic-iā.</i>
Acc. <i>Felic-em</i> ,	<i>felix.</i> }		
Gen. <i>Felic-īs.</i>		<i>Felic-ium.</i>	
Dat. <i>Felic-i.</i>	}	<i>Felic-ibus.</i>	
Abl. <i>Felic-i (rarely-ě).</i>			
N.V. <i>Ingens.</i>	}	<i>Ingent-ēs</i> ,	<i>ingent-iā.</i>
Acc. <i>Ingent-em</i> ,	<i>ingens.</i> }		
Gen. <i>Ingent-īs.</i>		<i>Ingent-ium.</i>	
Dat. <i>Ingent-i.</i>	}	<i>Ingent-ibus.</i>	
Abl. <i>Ingent-ě (or -i).</i>			

Some Adjectives in *-er* belong to this class, but have a Feminine form in the Nominative Singular, as, *ācer, keen.*

M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.V. <i>Acēr, acr-īs</i> ,	<i>acr-ě.</i>	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-iā.</i>
Acc. <i>Acr-em</i> ,	<i>acr-e.</i>	<i>Acr-ēs</i> ,	<i>acr-iā.</i>
Gen. <i>Acr-īs.</i>		<i>Acr-ium.</i>	
D.A. <i>Acr-i.</i>		<i>Acr-ibus.</i>	

Like 'acer' are declined,—alācer, celēber, equester, pedester, volūcer, salūber, celer, and a few others¹. Celer keeps the e throughout, as, Sing. N.V. Celer, celēris, celēre.

§ 23. **Numeral and Quasi-Numeral Adjectives.** These for the most part make Gen. Sing. in -ius, and the Dat. in -i; as, ūnus, *one*; ālius, *another*; ūter, *which of two*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Unūs,	-ā,	-um.	Un-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Un-um	-am,	-um.	Un-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Un-īus (of all Genders).			Un-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Un-i (of all Genders).			} Un-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Un-o,	-a,	-o.			
Nom. Aliūs,	-ā,	-ūd.	Ali-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Ali-um,	-am,	-ud.	Ali-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Ali-us (of all Genders).			Ali-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Ali-i (of all Genders).			} Ali-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Ali-o,	-a,	-o.			
Nom. Uter, utr-ā, utr-um.			Utr-i,	-ae,	-ā.
Acc. Utr-um,	-am,	-um.	Utr-os,	-as,	-ā.
Gen. Utr-īus (of all Genders).			Utr-orum,	-arum,	-orum.
Dat. Utr-i (of all Genders).			} Utr-īs (of all Genders).		
Abl. Utr-o,	-a,	-o.			

The Adjectives which make -ius in Gen. Sing. and -i in Dat. are:

Unus, solus, totus, ullus,
Uter, alter, neuter, nullus²;

with alius, *another*, and compounds of uter, as uterque, *each of two*, the suffix -que being added to each of the cases, as, Sing. Nom. uterque, utrāque, utrumque. Those in -us are

¹ Brisk, celebrated, equestrian, pedestrian, winged, healthful, swift.

² One, alone or the only, the whole, any at all; which of two, the other or one of two, neither, none.

declined like unus, those in -er like uter. But alter keeps the e throughout, as Sing. N. alter, altēra, altērūm.

Unus is only used in the Plural when it agrees with a Noun which has no Singular, or which has a different meaning in the Plural from the Singular, as, una castra, *one camp*, unae litterae, *one epistle*.

The Numerals duo, *two*, and tres, *three*, are thus declined :

PLURAL.			PLURAL.	
M.	F.	N.	M.F.	N.
Nom. Duō,	duae,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
Acc. Du-os or duō,	du-as,	duō.	Trēs,	triā.
Gen. Du-orum,	du-arum,	du-orum.	Tr-ium.	
D.Ab. Du-ōbus,	du-ābus,	du-ōbus.	Trī-bus.	

Ambo, *both*, is declined like duo.

The other Cardinal Numbers, (see p. 133) from quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

§ 24. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of Comparison, the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

§ 25. Rule for Comparison of Adjectives. The Comparative is formed from the Positive by changing -i or -is of the Genitive into -ior.

The Superlative is formed from the Positive by changing -i or -is of the Genitive into -issim¹us, as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Durus, <i>hard</i> , G. duri,	durior, <i>harder</i> ,	durissimus, <i>hardest</i> , or <i>very hard</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> , G. brevis,	brevior, <i>shorter</i> ,	brevissimus, <i>shortest</i> , or <i>very short</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> , G. audacis,	audacior, <i>bolder</i> ,	audacissimus, <i>boldest</i> , or <i>very bold</i> .

¹ Often written -issimus.

§ 26. **Exceptions.**

(a) *Adjectives in -er.* Adjectives in *-er* form their Comparatives according to the rule, but form their Superlatives from the *Nominative* Masculine Singular of the Positive by adding *-rĭmus*, as, *pulcher, beautiful*, Gen. *pulchri*, Comparative *pulchrior, more beautiful*, Superlative *pulcherrimus, most beautiful* or *very beautiful*.

(b) *Adjectives in -ilis.* Six Adjectives in *-ilis*, namely—

facilis, easy, similis, like, gracilis, slender,
difficilis, difficult, dissimilis, unlike, humilis, lowly,

form their Superlative by changing *-is* of the Genitive into *-lĭmus*, as, *facilis, easy, facillimus*. Other Adjectives in *-ilis* have commonly no Superlative.

(c) *-us preceded by a Vowel.* If a vowel comes before *-us* in the *Nominative*, the comparison is generally made by the Adverbs *magis, more*, and *maxime, most*, as, *idoneus, useful, magis idoneus, more useful, maxime idoneus, most useful* or *very useful*. Except when *qu* precedes, as *antiquus, ancient, antiquior, antiquissimus*.

(d) *-dĭcus, -fĭcus, -vŏlus.* Adjectives in *-dĭcus, -fĭcus*, and *-volus*, make *-entior, -entissimus* in the Comparative and Superlative, as, *malevŏl-us, spiteful, malevŏl-entior, malevŏl-entissimus*.

§ 27. **Irregular Comparison.** Many Adjectives are compared irregularly, as:

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior,	optimus.
Malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor,	pessimus.
Magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major,	maximus.
Parvus, <i>small</i> ,	minor,	minimus.
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	plus,	plurimus.
Nequam, <i>worthless</i> ,	nequior,	nequissimus.

Other irregular comparisons worthy of notice are :

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Senex, <i>old</i> ,	senior, [natu major],	[natu maximus].
Juvenis, <i>young</i> ,	junior,	[natu minimus].
Dexter, <i>on the right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextimus.
Sinister, <i>on the left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistimus.
Sacer, <i>sacred</i> ,	. . .	sacerrimus.
Surdus, <i>deaf</i> ,	surdior	. . .

Four Adjectives derived from Prepositions have a double Superlative :

Preposition.	Positive Adjective.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Extra, <i>outside</i> ,	extērus, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus and extimus.
Infra, <i>beneath</i> ,	infērus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infimus and imus.
Supra, <i>above</i> ,	supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprēmus and summus.
Post, <i>after</i> ,	postērus, <i>next after</i> ,	posterior,	postrēmus and postumus.

Six Adjectives derived from Prepositions have no Positive :

Preposition.	Comparative Adj.	Superlative.
Citra, <i>on this side</i> ,	citērior,	citimus.
De, <i>down from</i> ,	detērior (<i>less good</i>),	detrerrimus.
Intra, <i>within</i> ,	intērior,	intimus.
Prae, <i>before</i> ,	prior (<i>former</i>),	prīmus (<i>first</i>).
Prope, <i>near</i> ,	propior,	proximus.
Ultra, <i>beyond</i> ,	ultērior,	ultimus (<i>last</i>).

§ 28. **Comparison of Adverbs.** Adverbs derived from Adjectives usually make -ius in the Comparative, and -issime in the Superlative, as :

Digne, <i>worthily</i> ,	dignius,	dignissime.
Graviter, <i>heavily</i> ,	gravius,	gravissime.
Audacter, <i>boldly</i> ,	audacius,	audacissime.

§ 29.

PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Reflexive, (3) Possessive, (4) Demonstrative, (5) Definitive, (6) Relative, (7) Interrogative, and (8) Indefinite. Of these the Personal and Reflexive are Substantival Pronouns, the others Adjectival.

§ 30. **Personal Pronouns.** The Personal Pronouns are *egō, I*, and *tū, thou* or *you*, which are thus declined:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. <i>Egō, I.</i>	Nos, <i>we.</i>
Acc. <i>Mē, me.</i>	Nos, <i>us.</i>
Gen. <i>Mei, of me.</i>	Nostrum or Nostri, <i>of us.</i>
Dat. <i>Mihī, to or for me.</i>	Nōbīs, <i>to or for us.</i>
Abl. <i>Mē¹, by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbīs ¹ , <i>by, with, or from us.</i>
N. V. <i>Tu, thou or you.</i>	Vos, <i>ye or you.</i>
Acc. <i>Tē, thee or you.</i>	Vos, <i>you.</i>
Gen. <i>Tui, of thee or you.</i>	Vestrum or Vestri, <i>of you.</i>
Dat. <i>Tibī, to or for thee or you.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to or for you.</i>
Abl. <i>Tē¹, by, with, or from thee</i>	Vōbīs ¹ , <i>by, with, or from you.</i>
	<i>or you.</i>

Note. *Ille, illa, illud*, and *is, ea, id*, are often used as Personal Pronouns, and translated *he, she, it*.

§ 31. **Reflexive Pronoun.** The Reflexive Pronoun is *se, himself, herself, itself, or themselves*.

Nom. (wanting).
Acc. <i>Sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Gen. <i>Sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.</i>
Dat. <i>Sibi, to or for himself, herself, itself, themselves.</i>
Abl. <i>Sē¹ or sēsē, by, with, or from himself, etc.</i>

§ 32. **Possessive Pronouns.** The Possessive Pronouns are *meus, my*, *tuus, thy*, *suus, his own, her own, its own*, or *their own*, and *cujus, whose*, which are declined like

¹ A Preposition must be used. See § 16, *Note*; and § 222.

bonus; *noster*, *our*, and *vester*, *your*, which are declined like *pulcher*.

Note. *Meus* has *mi* in the Vocative Singular Masculine. *Tuus* and *sutus* have no Vocative.

§ 33. **Demonstrative Pronouns.** The Demonstrative Pronouns are *hic*, *this*, *is*, *that*, *ille*, *that*, *iste*, *that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. <i>Hic</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	<i>Hi</i> ,	<i>hae</i> ,	<i>haec</i> .
Acc. <i>Hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	<i>Hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>haec</i> .
Gen. <i>Hujus</i> (of all Genders).			<i>Horum</i> ,	<i>harum</i> ,	<i>horum</i> .
Dat. <i>Huic</i> (of all Genders).			} <i>His</i> (of all Genders).		
Abl. <i>Hoc</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .			
Nom. <i>Is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> .	<i>Ii</i> (<i>ei</i>),	<i>cae</i> ,	<i>ea</i> .
Acc. <i>Eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> .	<i>Eos</i> ,	<i>cas</i> ,	<i>ea</i> .
Gen. <i>Ejus</i> (of all Genders).			<i>Eorum</i> ,	<i>earum</i> ,	<i>eorum</i> .
Dat. <i>Ei</i> (of all Genders).			} <i>Iis</i> or <i>eis</i> (of all Genders).		
Abl. <i>Eo</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	<i>eo</i> .			
Nom. <i>Ille</i> ,	<i>illa</i> ,	<i>illud</i> .	<i>Illi</i> ,	<i>illae</i> ,	<i>illa</i> .
Acc. <i>Illum</i> ,	<i>illam</i> ,	<i>illud</i> .	<i>Illos</i> ,	<i>illas</i> ,	<i>illa</i> .
Gen. <i>Illius</i> (of all Genders).			<i>Illorum</i> ,	<i>illarum</i> ,	<i>illorum</i> .
Dat. <i>Illi</i> (of all Genders).			} <i>Illis</i> (of all Genders).		
Abl. <i>Illo</i> ,	<i>illā</i> ,	<i>illo</i> .			

Iste is declined like *ille*.

Note. *Hic* means *this near me*, or *this of mine*, *iste*, *that near you*, or *that of yours*, and *ille*, *that yonder* or *that other*.

§ 34. **Definitive Pronouns.** The Definitive Pronouns are *idem*, *the same*, and *ipse*, *self*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Idem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> .	<i>Idem</i> ,	<i>eaedem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> .
A. <i>Eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>idem</i> .	<i>Eosdem</i> ,	<i>easdem</i> ,	<i>cadem</i> .
G. <i>Ejusdem</i> (of all Genders).			<i>Eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> .
D. <i>Eīdem</i> (of all Genders).			} <i>Eīdem</i> or <i>Iīdem</i> (of all Genders).		
A. <i>Eodem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eodem</i> .			

Ipse is declined like **ille**, except that it makes **ipsum** in the Neuter Nom., and Acc.

§ 35. **Relative Pronoun.** The Relative Pronoun is **qui**, *who* or *which*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Qui,	quae,	quod.	Qui,	quae,	quae.
Acc. Quem,	quam,	quod.	Quos,	quas,	quae.
Gen. Cujus (of all Genders).			Quorum,	quarum,	quorum.
Dat. Cui (of all Genders).			} Quibus or queis or quīs (of all Genders).		
Abl. { Quo,	quā,	quo.			
Qui,	qui,	qui.			

§ 36. **Interrogative Pronoun.** The Interrogative Pronoun is Nom. **quis**, (**quis**), **quid**, *who?* or *what?* declined in the other cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is **qui**, **quae**, **quod**, declined exactly like **qui**.

§ 37. **Indefinite Pronoun.** The Indefinite Pronoun is Nom. **quis**, (**qua**), **quid**, *any*, declined in the other cases like **qui**, except that it makes **quid** instead of **quod** in the Neuter Singular, and **quā** or **quae** in the Neuter Plural. If it agrees with a Substantive the form is **qui**, **quae** (or **quā**), **quod**, declined exactly like the Relative **qui**, except Neuter Plural **quā** or **quae**. See also § 166.

THE VERB.

§ 38. **Voice.** Verbs have two Voices, the Active, as, *amo, I love*; the Passive, as, *amor, I am loved*.

§ 39. **Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.** Transitive Verbs are those in which the action passes on directly to some person or thing, which is called the Object, as, *amo te, I love thee*. Intransitive or Neuter Verbs are those in which the action does not pass on directly to an Object, as, *sto, I stand*. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in what is

called the Impersonal Passive Construction, as, *statur, it is stood, or a stand is made.*

§ 40. **Deponents.** Deponent Verbs are Passive in form but *lay aside* (depono) the Passive meaning, as, *hortor, I exhort.*

§ 41. **Moods.** There are four Moods, the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive. The first three constitute the Verb Finite, the last one the Verb Infinitive.

§ 42. **Tenses.** There are Seven Tenses, four Primary, namely, the Present, Future Simple, Perfect, Future Perfect; and three Historic, namely, the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect. (For a Synopsis of Tense meanings, and comparison of the forms in Greek, French, &c., see p. 67.)

§ 43. **Number and Person.** There are in each Tense two Numbers, Singular and Plural, and in each Number three Persons, First, Second, and Third.

§ 44. **Conjugation.** Verbs have four different kinds of Flexion, which are called the Four Conjugations.

The First takes *-āre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *amāre, to love.*

The Second takes *-ēre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *monēre, to advise.*

The Third takes *-ĕre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *regĕre, to rule.*

The Fourth takes *-īre* in the Infin. Mood, as, *audīre, to hear.*

§ 45. **Principal Parts of the Verb.** The parts of the Verb from which all the other Tenses may be formed are the Present, Perfect, and Supine in *-um*. These, together with the Infinitive Mood, are to be named when the principal parts of a Verb are required, e.g.:

	Pres. Indic.	Infinitive.	Perfect Indic.	Supine.
1st Conj.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.
2nd Conj.	Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum.
3rd Conj.	Rego,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum.
4th Conj.	Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	auditum.

§ 46. The Verb *Sum, Esse, Fui, to be.* Before other Verbs are conjugated it is necessary to learn the Auxiliary Verb *sum, esse, fui, to be.*

§ 47. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. sum, I am.</i> <i>ēs, Thou art.</i> <i>est, He is.</i> [See also § 61.] <i>P. sūmus, We are.</i> <i>estis, Ye are.</i> <i>sunt, They are.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. ēro, I shall be.</i> <i>eris, Thou wilt be.</i> <i>erit, He will be.</i> <i>P. erīmus, We shall be.</i> <i>eritis, Ye will be.</i> <i>erunt, They will be.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. fūi, I have been.</i> <i>fuiſti, Thou haſt been.</i> <i>fuit, He has been.</i> <i>P. fuīmus, We have been.</i> <i>fuistiſ, Ye have been.</i> <i>fuērunt or fuēre, They have been.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. fuēro, I shall have been.</i> <i>fueris, Thou wilt have been.</i> <i>fuerit, He will have been.</i> <i>P. fuerīmus, We shall have been.</i> <i>fueritis, Ye will have been.</i> <i>fuerint, They will have been.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT
TENSE.

S. *eram, I was.*
eras, Thou wast.
erat, He was.
 P. *erāmus, We were.*
eratis, Ye were.
erant, They were.

AORIST
TENSE.

S. *fui, I was.*
fuisti, Thou wast.
fuit, He was.
 P. *fuīmus, We were.*
fuistis, Ye were.
fuērunt or fuēre, They were.

PLUPERFECT
TENSE.

S. *fūeram, I had been.*
fueras, Thou hadst been.
fuerat, He had been.
 P. *fuerāmus, We had been.*
fueratis, Ye had been.
fuerant, They had been.

Note. The Pronoun *you* may be used to translate both the Second Person Singular, and the Second Person Plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. sim, I may be, or may I be.</i> <i>sis, Thou mayst be, or mayst thou be.</i> <i>sit, He may be, or may he be.</i></p> <p><i>P. simus, We may be, or may we be.</i> <i>sitis, Ye may be, or may ye be.</i> <i>sint, They may be, or may they be.</i></p>	But often translated as a Present Indicative.
FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>The Future Simple in this mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with <i>sim</i> or <i>essem</i>, as <i>futurus sim</i> or <i>essem</i>¹. (The form <i>futurus essem</i> belongs to the Historic Tenses.) The Tense is thus declined—</p> <p><i>S. futurus sim or essem.</i>² <i>futurus sis or esses.</i> <i>futurus sit or esset.</i></p> <p><i>P. futuri simus or essēmus.</i> <i>futuri sitis or essetis.</i> <i>futuri sint or essent.</i></p>	
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. fūērīm, I may have been.</i> <i>fueris, Thou mayst have been.</i> <i>fuerit, He may have been.</i></p> <p><i>P. fuerīmus, We may have been.</i> <i>fuerītis, Ye may have been.</i> <i>fuerint, They may have been.</i></p>	But often translated as a Perfect or Aorist Indicative.

¹ Or, more properly, *futur-us, -ā, -um sim* or *essem*. See § 61.

² No English translation which will be of any use to the learner can be given for this Tense. Where it occurs in Latin it is translated either by a Simple Future Indicative, as, *incertum est an in urbe futurus sit*, *it is uncertain whether he will be in the city*, or by *would*, as, *incertum erat an in urbe futurus esset*, *it was uncertain whether he would be in the city*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> essem,¹ <i>I should or might be.</i> esses, <i>Thou wouldst or mightst be.</i> esset, <i>He would or might be.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> essēmus, <i>We should or might be.</i> essētis, <i>Ye would or might be.</i> essent, <i>They would or might be.</i></p>	But often translated as an Imperfect or Aorist Indicative.
AORIST TENSE.	<p>Rendered variously by <i>fuerm</i>, <i>essem</i>, and <i>fuissem</i>. See §§ 205, 206.</p>	
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> fuissem, <i>I should or might</i> fuissem, <i>Thou wouldst or mightst</i> fuisset, <i>He would or might</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> fuissēmus, <i>We should or might</i> fuissētis, <i>Ye would or might</i> fuissent, <i>They would or might</i></p>	<p>} <i>have been.</i></p> <p>But often translated as a Pluperfect Indicative.</p>

¹ Another form of the Imperfect is *fōrem*, *forēs*, *foret*, *foremus*, *foretis*, *forent*.

Compounds of Sum. Like sum are conjugated its compounds,

absum, *I am absent.*

adsum, *I am present.*

desum, *I am wanting.*

insum, *I am in.*

intersum, *I am present.*

obsum, *I am in the way.*

praesum, *I am set over.*

prosum, *I am of use.*

subsum, *I am under.*

supersum, *I am surviving.*

Subsum wants the Perfect, and tenses derived from it. Prosum inserts *d* before *e*, as Ind. Pres. prosum, prodes, prodest, prosūmus, prodestis, prosunt. Possum [for potis sum], *to be able*, will be fully conjugated hereafter (see p. 68). Absum and praesum alone have Present Participles, absens and praesens.

EXAMPLES.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
S. ab-sum.	de-fui.	in-eram.
ab-es.	de-fuisti.	in-eras.
ab-est.	de-fuit.	in-erat.
P. ab-sūmus.	de-fuimus.	in-erāmus.
ab-estis.	de-fuistis.	in-eratis.
ab-sunt.	de-fuēr-unt, or -ēre.	in-erant.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. ob-sim.	prae-fuerim.	prod-essem.
ob-sis.	prae-fueris.	prod-esses.
ob-sit.	prae-fuerit.	prod-esset.
P. ob-sīmus.	prae-fuerīmus.	prod-essēmus.
ob-sitis.	prae-fuerītis.	prod-essetis.
ob-sint.	prae-fuerint.	prod-essent.

§ 48. FIRST CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>ăm-o, I love, am loving, or do love.</i> <i>am-as, Thou lovest, art loving, or dost love.</i> <i>am-at, He loves, is loving, or does love.</i></p> <p>P. <i>am-āmus, We love, are loving, or do love.</i> <i>am-atis, Ye love, are loving, or do love.</i> <i>am-ant, They love, are loving, or do love.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p>S. <i>am-ābo, I shall love.</i> <i>am-abis, Thou wilt love.</i> <i>am-abit, He will love.</i></p> <p>P. <i>am-abīmus, We shall love.</i> <i>am-abitis, Ye will love.</i> <i>am-abunt, They will love.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>amāv-i, I have loved.</i> <i>amav-isti, Thou hast loved.</i> <i>amav-it, He has loved.</i></p> <p>P. <i>amav-īmus, We have loved.</i> <i>amav-istis, Ye have loved.</i> <i>amav-ērunt or -ēre, They have loved.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. <i>amāv-ēro, I shall have loved.</i> <i>amav-eris, Thou wilt have loved.</i> <i>amav-erit, He will have loved.</i></p> <p>P. <i>amav-erīmus, We shall have loved.</i> <i>amav-eritis, Ye will have loved.</i> <i>amav-erint, They will have loved.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-ābam, <i>I was loving, or I loved.</i>¹ am-abas, <i>Thou wast loving, or thou lovedst.</i> am-aḅat, <i>He was loving, or he loved.</i> P. am-abāmus, <i>We were loving, etc.</i> am-abatis, <i>Ye were loving.</i> am-abant, <i>They were loving.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. amāv-i, <i>I loved, or did love.</i> amav-isti, <i>Thou lovedst, or didst love.</i> amav-it, <i>He loved, or did love.</i> P. amav-īmus, <i>We loved, etc.</i> amav-istis, <i>Ye loved.</i> amav-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They loved.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. amāv-ēram, <i>I had loved.</i> amav-eras, <i>Thou hadst loved.</i> amav-erat, <i>He had loved.</i> P. amav-erāmus, <i>We had loved.</i> amav-eratis, <i>Ye had loved.</i> amav-erant, <i>They had loved.</i></p>
<p>¹ See also § 64.</p>	

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
Primary Tenses.		
PRESENT TENSE.	<i>S. am-em, I may love, or may I love.</i> <i>am-es, Thou mayst love, etc.</i> <i>am-et, He may love.</i> <i>P. am-ēmus, We may love.</i> <i>am-etis, Ye may love.</i> <i>am-ent, They may love.</i>	But often translated as a Present Indicative.
PERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. amav-ērim, I may</i> <i>amav-eris, Thou mayst</i> <i>amav-erit, He may</i> <i>P. amav-erīmus, We may</i> <i>amav-eritis, Ye may</i> <i>amav-erint, They may</i>	<i>have loved.</i> But often translated as a Perfect or Aorist Indicative.
Historic Tenses.		
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. am-ārem, I should or might love.</i> <i>am-ares, Thou wouldst love, etc.</i> <i>am-aret, He would love.</i> <i>P. am-arēmus, We should love.</i> <i>am-aretis, Ye would love.</i> <i>am-arent, They would love.</i>	But often translated as an Imperfect or Aorist Indicative.
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. amav-issem, I</i> <i>amav-isses, Thou</i> <i>amav-isset, He</i> <i>P. amav-issēmus, We</i> <i>amav-issetis, Ye</i> <i>amav-issent, They</i>	<i>should or might have loved.</i> But often translated as a Pluperfect Indicative.

Future Simple Tense. The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *amaturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

Aorist Tense. The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *amaverim*, *amarem*, and *amavissem*. See §§ 205, 206.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. am-ā, <i>love thou</i> , am-āto, <i>thou must love</i> .
	3 Pers. am-āto, <i>he must love</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. am-āte, <i>love ye</i> , am-ātōte, <i>ye must love</i>
	3 Pers. am-anto, <i>they must love</i> .

Note 1. The forms amato, amato, amatote, amanto are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, amet, *let him love*, amemus, *let us love*, ament, *let them love*.

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	ām-āre, <i>to love</i> (or <i>loving</i> , in the sense of 'the act of loving.')
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	amāv-isse, <i>to have loved</i> .
	FUTURE,	amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love</i> .
Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	am-andum, <i>loving</i> .
	GENITIVE,	am-andi, <i>of loving</i> .
	DAT. ABL.,	am-ando, <i>for or by loving</i> .
Supines.	{ in -um	am-ātum, <i>in order to love</i> .
	{ in -u	am-ātu, <i>in loving</i> .
Participles.	PRESENT,	am-ans, <i>loving</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302.)
	FUTURE,	am-ātūrus, <i>about to love</i> .

§ 49. SECOND CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mōn-eo, I advise, am advising, or do advise.</i> <i>mon-es, Thou advisest, art advising, or dost</i> <i>mon-et, He advises, etc. [advise.]</i></p> <p><i>P. mon-ēmus, We advise.</i> <i>mon-etis, Ye advise.</i> <i>mon-ent, They advise.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ēbo, I shall advise.</i> <i>mon-ebis, Thou will advise.</i> <i>mon-ebit, He will advise.</i></p> <p><i>P. mon-ebīmus, We shall advise.</i> <i>mon-ebitis, Ye will advise.</i> <i>mon-ebunt, They will advise.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monŭ-i, I have advised.</i> <i>monu-isti, Thou hast advised.</i> <i>monu-it, He has advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. monu-īmus, We have advised.</i> <i>monu-istis, Ye have advised.</i> <i>monu-ērunt or -ēre, They have advised.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monŭ-ēro, I shall have advised.</i> <i>monu-eris, Thou will have advised.</i> <i>monu-erit, He will have advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. monu-erīmus, We shall have advised.</i> <i>monu-eritis, Ye will have advised.</i> <i>monu-erint, They will have advised.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. mon-ēbam, <i>I was advising or I advised.</i> mon-ebas, <i>Thou wast advising, etc.</i> mon-ebat, <i>He was advising.</i></p> <p>P. mon-ebāmus, <i>We were advising.</i> mon-ebatis, <i>Ye were advising.</i> mon-ebant, <i>They were advising.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-i, <i>I advised or did advise.</i> monu-isti, <i>Thou advisedst, etc.</i> monu-it, <i>He advised.</i></p> <p>P. monu-īmus, <i>We advised.</i> monu-istis, <i>Ye advised.</i> monu-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They advised.</i></p>
PLUPER- FECT TENSE.	<p>S. monŭ-eram, <i>I had advised.</i> monu-eras, <i>Thou hadst advised.</i> monu-erat, <i>He had advised.</i></p> <p>P. monu-erāmus, <i>We had advised.</i> monu-eratis, <i>Ye had advised.</i> monu-erant, <i>They had advised.</i></p>

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	S. mon-ēam, <i>I may advise or may I advise.</i> mon-eas, <i>Thou mayst advise, etc.</i> mon-eat, <i>He may advise.</i> P. mon-eāmus, <i>We may advise.</i> mon-eatis, <i>Ye may advise.</i> mon-eant, <i>They may advise.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	S. monŭ-ērim, <i>I may have advised.</i> monu-eris, <i>Thou mayst have advised.</i> monu-erit, <i>He may have advised.</i> P. monu-erīmus, <i>We may have advised.</i> monu-eritis, <i>Ye may have advised.</i> monu-erint, <i>They may have advised.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	S. mon-ērem, <i>I should or might advise.</i> mon-eres, <i>Thou wouldst advise, etc.</i> mon-eret, <i>He would advise.</i> P. mon-erēmus, <i>We should advise.</i> mon-eretis, <i>Ye would advise.</i> mon-erent, <i>They would advise.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	S. monŭ-issem, <i>I should or might have advised.</i> monu-isses, <i>Thou wouldst have advised, etc.</i> monu-isset, <i>He would have advised.</i> P. monu-issēmus, <i>We should have advised.</i> monu-issetis, <i>Ye would have advised.</i> monu-issent, <i>They would have advised.</i>

Future Simple Tense. The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *moniturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

Aorist Tense. The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *monuerim*, *monērem*, and *monuissē*. See §§ 205, 206.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S.	2 Pers. mon-ē, <i>advise thou</i> , mon-ēto, <i>thou must advise</i> .
		3 Pers. mon-ēto, <i>he must advise</i> .
	P.	2 Pers. mon-ēte, <i>advise ye</i> , mon-ētōte, <i>ye must advise</i> .
		3 Pers. mon-ento, <i>they must advise</i> .

Note 1. The forms moneto, moneto, monetote, monento are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, moneat, *let him advise*, moneamus, *let us advise*, moneant, *let them advise*.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	mon-ēre, <i>to advise</i> (or <i>advising</i> in the sense of 'the act of advising').
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, FUTURE,	monŭ-isse, <i>to have advised</i> . mon-ītŭrus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i> .
Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	mon-endum, <i>advising</i> .
	GENITIVE,	mon-endi, <i>of advising</i> .
	DAT. ABL.,	mon-endo, <i>for or by advising</i> .
Supines.	in -um	mon-ītum, <i>in order to advise</i> .
	in -u	mon-itu, <i>in advising</i> .
Participles.	PRESENT,	mon-ens, <i>advising</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302).
	FUTURE,	mon-ītŭrus, <i>about to advise</i> .

§ 50. THIRD CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rēg-o, I rule, am ruling, or do rule.</i> <i>reg-is, Thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule.</i> <i>reg-it, He rules, is ruling, or does rule.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-imus, We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i> <i>reg-itis, Ye rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i> <i>reg-unt, They rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. reg-am, I shall rule.</i> <i>reg-es, Thou wilt rule.</i> <i>reg-et, He will rule.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-ēmus, We shall rule.</i> <i>reg-etis, Ye will rule.</i> <i>reg-ent, They will rule.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rex-i, I have ruled.</i> <i>rex-isti, Thou hast ruled.</i> <i>rex-it, He has ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rex-imus, We have ruled.</i> <i>rex-istis, Ye have ruled.</i> <i>rex-ērunt or -ēre, They have ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rex-ēro, I shall have ruled.</i> <i>rex-eris, Thou wilt have ruled.</i> <i>rex-erit, He will have ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rex-erimus, We shall have ruled.</i> <i>rex-eritis, Ye will have ruled.</i> <i>rex-erint, They will have ruled.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. reg-ēbam, I was ruling, or I ruled.</i> <i>reg-ebas, Thou wast ruling, etc.</i> <i>reg-ebat, He was ruling.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-ebāmus, We were ruling.</i> <i>reg-ebatis, Ye were ruling.</i> <i>reg-ebant, They were ruling.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p><i>S. rex-i, I ruled or did rule.</i> <i>rex-isti, Thou ruledst, etc.</i> <i>rex-it, He ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rex-īmus, We ruled.</i> <i>rex-istis, Ye ruled.</i> <i>rex-ērunt or -ēre, They ruled.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rex-eram, I had ruled.</i> <i>rex-eras, Thou hadst ruled.</i> <i>rex-erat, He had ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. rex-erāmus, We had ruled.</i> <i>rex-eratis, Ye had ruled.</i> <i>rex-erant, They had ruled.</i></p>

Note on verbs in -io. Certain Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in *-io* in the First Person Present Indicative, as *capio, I take, facio, I make, fugio, I fly, etc.*¹ These retain the *i* except before *i*, final *e*, and short *er*, as Pres. Indic. *fugi-o, fug-is, fug-it, fug-īmus, fug-ītis, fugi-unt*; Future Indic. *fugi-am*; Pres. Imperative, *fug-e*; Imperf. Subj. *fugĕrem*; Present Infinitive, *fug-ĕre*.

¹ The others are, *cupio, desire, sodio, dig, jacio, throw, pario, bring forth, quatio, shake, rapio, seize, sapio, savour*, and their compounds; also compounds of the unused verbs, *lacio, entice*, and *specio, behold*. For *gradior, morior, orior, patior, potior*, see page 66.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	<i>S. reg-am, I may rule, or may I rule.</i> <i>reg-as, Thou mayst rule, or mayst thou rule.</i> <i>reg-at, He may rule, or may he rule.</i> <i>P. reg-āmus, We may rule, or may we rule</i> <i>reg-atis, Ye may rule, or may ye rule.</i> <i>reg-ant, They may rule, or may they rule.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. rex-ērim, I may have ruled.</i> <i>rex-eris, Thou mayst have ruled.</i> <i>rex-erit, He may have ruled.</i> <i>P. rex-erīmus, We may have ruled.</i> <i>rex-eritis, Ye may have ruled.</i> <i>rex-erint, They may have ruled.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. reg-ĕrem, I should or might rule.</i> <i>reg-eres, Thou wouldst rule, etc.</i> <i>reg-eret, He would rule.</i> <i>P. reg-erēmus, We should rule.</i> <i>reg-eretis, Ye would rule.</i> <i>reg-erent, They would rule.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. rex-issem, I should or might have ruled.</i> <i>rex-isses, Thou wouldst have ruled, etc.</i> <i>rex-isset, He would have ruled.</i> <i>P. rex-issēmus, We should have ruled.</i> <i>rex-issetis, Ye would have ruled.</i> <i>rex-issent, They would have ruled.</i>

Future Simple Tense. The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *recturus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

Aorist Tense. The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *rexĕrim*, *regĕrem*, and *rexissem*. See §§ 205, 206.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. reg-ě, <i>rule thou</i> , reg-ĭto, <i>thou must rule</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-ĭto, <i>he must rule</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. reg-ĭte, <i>rule ye</i> , reg-ĭtōte, <i>ye must rule</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-unto, <i>they must rule</i> .

Note 1. The forms regito, regito, regitote, regunto are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, regat, *let him rule*, regamus, *let us rule*, regant, *let them rule*.

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	{ PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	reg-ěre, <i>to rule</i> (or <i>ruling</i> , in the sense of 'the act of ruling').
	{ PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	rex-isse, <i>to have ruled</i> .
	FUTURE,	rect-ūrus esse, <i>to be about to rule</i> .

Gerunds.	{ ACCUSATIVE,	reg-endum, <i>ruling</i> .
	{ GENITIVE,	reg-endi, <i>of ruling</i> .
	{ DAT. ABL.	reg-endo, <i>for or by ruling</i> .

Supines.	{ in -um	rect-um, <i>in order to rule</i> .
	{ in -u	rect-u, <i>in ruling</i> .

Participles.	{ PRESENT,	reg-ens, <i>ruling</i> (declined like ingens).
	{ PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302.)
	{ FUTURE,	rect-ūrus, <i>about to rule</i> .

§ 51. FOURTH CONJUGATION. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-ŷo, I hear, am hearing, or do hear.</i> <i>aud-is, Thou hearest, art hearing, or dost</i> <i>aud-it, He hears, etc.</i> [hear.]</p> <p><i>P. aud-ŷmus, We hear.</i> <i>aud-itis, Ye hear.</i> <i>aud-iunt, They hear.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-ŷam, I shall hear.</i> <i>aud-ies, Thou wilt hear.</i> <i>aud-iet, He will hear.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-ŷemus, We shall hear.</i> <i>aud-ietis, Ye will hear.</i> <i>aud-ient, They will hear.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audiv-i, I have heard.</i> <i>audiv-isti, Thou hast heard.</i> <i>audiv-it, He has heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. audiv-ŷmus, We have heard.</i> <i>audiv-istis, Ye have heard.</i> <i>audiv-erunt or -ere, They have heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audiv-erŷo, I shall have heard.</i> <i>audiv-eris, Thou wilt have heard.</i> <i>audiv-erit, He will have heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. audiv-erŷmus, We shall have heard.</i> <i>audiv-eritis, Ye will have heard.</i> <i>audiv-erint, They will have heard.</i></p>

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. aud-iēbam, <i>I was hearing</i>, or <i>I heard</i>. aud-iebas, <i>Thou wast hearing</i>, etc. aud-iebat, <i>He was hearing</i>.</p> <p>P. aud-iebāmus, <i>We were hearing</i>. aud-iebatis, <i>Ye were hearing</i>. aud-iebant, <i>They were hearing</i>.</p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. audīv-i, <i>I heard</i> or <i>did hear</i>. audiv-isti, <i>Thou heardest</i>, etc. audiv-it, <i>He heard</i>.</p> <p>P. audiv-īmus, <i>We heard</i>. audiv-istis, <i>Ye heard</i>. audiv-ērunt or -ēre, <i>They heard</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. audīv-eram, <i>I had heard</i>. audiv-eras, <i>Thou hadst heard</i>. audiv-erat, <i>He had heard</i>.</p> <p>P. audiv-erāmus, <i>We had heard</i>. audiv-eratis, <i>Ye had heard</i>. audiv-erant, <i>They had heard</i>.</p>

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	S. aud-īam, <i>I may hear, or may I hear.</i> aud-ias, <i>Thou mayst hear, or mayst thou hear.</i> aud-iat, <i>He may hear, or may he hear.</i> P. aud-iāmus, <i>We may hear, or may we hear.</i> aud-iatis, <i>Ye may hear, or may ye hear.</i> aud-iant, <i>They may hear, or may they hear.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	S. audiv-ērim, <i>I may have heard.</i> audiv-eris, <i>Thou mayst have heard.</i> audiv-erit, <i>He may have heard.</i> P. audiv-erīmus, <i>We may have heard.</i> audiv-eritis, <i>Ye may have heard.</i> audiv-erint, <i>They may have heard.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	S. aud-īrem, <i>I should or might hear.</i> aud-ires, <i>Thou shouldst hear, etc.</i> aud-iret, <i>He would hear.</i> P. aud-irēmus, <i>We should hear.</i> aud-iretis, <i>Ye would hear.</i> aud-irent, <i>They would hear.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	S. audiv-issem, <i>I should or might have heard.</i> audiv-isses, <i>Thou wouldst have heard, etc.</i> audiv-isset, <i>He would have heard.</i> P. audiv-issēmus, <i>We should have heard.</i> audiv-issetis, <i>Ye would have heard.</i> audiv-issent, <i>They would have heard.</i>

Future Simple Tense. The Future Simple in this Mood is formed by combining the Future Participle with *sim* or *essem*, as *auditurus sim* or *essem*. The form with *sim* belongs to the Primary Tenses, the form with *essem* to the Historic.

Aorist Tense. The Aorist Subjunctive is rendered variously by *audivērim*, *audirem*, and *audivissem*. See §§ 205, 206.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>S.</i> 2 Pers. aud-i, <i>hear thou</i> , aud-īto, <i>thou must hear.</i>
	3 Pers. aud-īto, <i>he must hear.</i>
	<i>P.</i> 2 Pers. aud-īte, <i>hear ye</i> , aud-ītōte, <i>ye must hear.</i>
	3 Pers. aud-iunto, <i>they must hear.</i>

Note 1. The forms audito, audito, auditote, audiunto are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, audiat, *let him hear*, audiamus, *let us hear*, audiant, *let them hear.*

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	aud-ire, <i>to hear</i> (or <i>hearing</i> in the sense of 'the act of hearing').
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	audiv-isse, <i>to have heard.</i>
	FUTURE,	audītūrus esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i>
Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	aud-iendum, <i>hearing.</i>
	GENITIVE,	aud-iendi, <i>of hearing.</i>
	DAT. ABL.,	aud-iendo, <i>for or by hearing.</i>
Supines.	in -um,	aud-ītum, <i>in order to hear.</i>
	in -u,	aud-itu, <i>in hearing.</i>
Participles.	PRESENT,	aud-iens, <i>hearing</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	(wanting, see § 302.)
	FUTURE,	aud-ītūrus, <i>about to hear.</i>

§ 52. FIRST CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ām-or, <i>I am loved</i> or <i>am being loved.</i> am-āris or -ārē, <i>Thou art loved</i>, etc. am-atur, <i>He is loved.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> am-amur, <i>We are loved.</i> am-amīni, <i>Ye are loved.</i> am-antur, <i>They are loved.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> am-ābor, <i>I shall be loved.</i> am-abēris or -abēre, <i>Thou wilt be loved.</i> am-abitur, <i>He will be loved.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> am-abimur, <i>We shall be loved.</i> am-abimīni, <i>Ye will be loved.</i> am-abuntur, <i>They will be loved.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE	<p><i>S.</i> am-ātus sum¹, <i>I have been loved.</i> am-atus es, <i>Thou hast been loved.</i> am-atus est, <i>He has been loved.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> am-ati sūmus, <i>We have been loved.</i> am-ati estis, <i>Ye have been loved.</i> am-ati sunt, <i>They have been loved.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> am-atus ēro², <i>I shall have been loved.</i> am-atus eris, <i>Thou wilt have been loved.</i> am-atus erit, <i>He will have been loved.</i></p> <p><i>P.</i> am-ati erīmus, <i>We shall have been loved.</i> am-ati erītis, <i>Ye will have been loved.</i> am-ati erunt, <i>They will have been loved.</i></p>
¹ or fui, etc. ² or fuēro, etc.	

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-ābar, <i>I was being loved, or I was loved.</i> am-abāris or -abāre, <i>Thou wast being loved,</i> am-abatur, <i>He was being loved.</i> [etc.]</p> <p>P. am-abamur, <i>We were being loved.</i> am-abamini, <i>Ye were being loved.</i> am-abantur, <i>They were being loved.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. am-atus sum¹, <i>I was loved.</i> am-atus es, <i>Thou wast loved.</i> am-atus est, <i>He was loved.</i></p> <p>P. am-ati sūmus, <i>We were loved.</i> am-ati estis, <i>Ye were loved.</i> am-ati sunt, <i>They were loved.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. am-atus ēram², <i>I had been loved.</i> am-atus eras, <i>Thou hadst been loved.</i> am-atus erat, <i>He had been loved.</i></p> <p>P. am-ati erāmus, <i>We had been loved.</i> am-ati eratis, <i>Ye had been loved.</i> am-ati erant, <i>They had been loved.</i></p>
¹ or fui, etc. ² or fuēram, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> am-er, <i>I may be loved</i>, or <i>may I be loved</i>. am-ēris or -ēre, <i>Thou mayst be loved</i>, etc. am-etur, <i>He may be loved</i>. <i>P.</i> am-emur, <i>We may be loved</i>. am-emini, <i>Ye may be loved</i>. am-entur, <i>They may be loved</i>.</p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> amatus sim¹, <i>I may have been loved</i>. amatus sis, <i>Thou mayst have been loved</i>. amatus sit, <i>He may have been loved</i>. <i>P.</i> amati simus, <i>We may have been loved</i>. amati sitis, <i>Ye may have been loved</i>. amati sint, <i>They may have been loved</i>.</p>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> am-ārer, <i>I should or might be loved</i>. am-arēris or -arēre, <i>Thou wouldst be loved</i>, am-aretur, <i>He would be loved</i>. [etc.] <i>P.</i> am-aremur, <i>We should be loved</i>. am-aremini, <i>Ye would be loved</i>. am-arentur, <i>They would be loved</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> amatus essem², <i>I should or might have been loved</i>. amatus esses, <i>Thou wouldst have been loved</i>. amatus esset, <i>He would have been loved</i>. <i>P.</i> amati essemus, <i>We should have been loved</i>. amati essetis, <i>Ye would have been loved</i>. amati essent, <i>They would have been loved</i>.</p>

Future-Simple Tense. Wanting: see § 296.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *amatus sim*, *amarer*, and *amatus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or fuērim, etc.

² or fuissem, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. am-āre, <i>be thou loved</i> , am-ātor, <i>thou must be loved.</i>
	3 Pers. am-ātor, <i>he must be loved.</i>
	P. 2 Pers. am-āmini, <i>be ye loved.</i>
	3 Pers. am-antor, <i>they must be loved.</i>

Note 1. The forms amator, amator, amantor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, ametur, *let him be loved*, amemur, *let us be loved*.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	am-āri, <i>to be loved.</i>
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	amātus esse or fuisse, <i>to have been loved.</i>
	FUTURE,	amātum iri, <i>to be about to be loved.</i>

Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being loved' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum amatur.
	PERFECT,	amātus, <i>loved, being loved, or having been loved.</i>
	FUTURE,	(wanting.)
	GERUNDIVE,	am-andus, <i>that must be loved.</i>

§ 53. SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT
TENSE.

S. mōn-ēor, *I am advised, or am being ad-*
mon-ēris or -ēre, Thou art advised. [vised.
mon-etur, He is advised.
P. mon-emur, *We are advised.*
mon-emini, Ye are advised.
mon-entur, They are advised.

FUTURE-
SIMPLE
TENSE.

S. mon-ēbor, *I shall be advised.* [vised.
mon-ēbēris or -ēbēre, Thou wilt be ad-
mon-ebitur, He will be advised.
P. mon-ēbimur, *We shall be advised.*
mon-ebimini, Ye will be advised.
mon-ebuntur, They will be advised.

PERFECT
TENSE.

S. monitus sum¹, *I have been advised.*
monitus es, Thou hast been advised.
monitus est, He has been advised.
P. moniti sumus, *We have been advised.*
moniti estis, Ye have been advised.
moniti sunt, They have been advised.

FUTURE-
PERFECT
TENSE.

S. monitus ēro², *I shall have been advised.*
monitus eris, Thou will have been advised.
monitus erit, He will have been advised.
P. moniti erimus, *We shall have been advised.*
moniti eritis, Ye will have been advised.
moniti erunt, They will have been advised.

¹ or fui, etc.² or fuēro, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT
TENSE.

S. mon-ēbar, *I was being advised, or I was advised.* [*advised.*

mon-ebāris or -ebare, Thou wast being
mon-ebatur, He was being advised.

P. mon-ebamur, *We were being advised.*

mon-ebamini, Ye were being advised.

mon-ebantur, They were being advised.

AORIST
TENSE.

S. monitus sum¹, *I was advised.*

monitus es, Thou wast advised.

monitus est, He was advised.

P. moniti sūmus, *We were advised.*

moniti estis, Ye were advised.

moniti sunt, They were advised.

PLUPERFECT
TENSE.

S. monitus eram², *I had been advised.*

monitus eras, Thou hadst been advised.

monitus erat, He had been advised.

P. moniti erāmus, *We had been advised.*

moniti eratis, Ye had been advised.

moniti erant, They had been advised.

¹ or fui. etc.

² or fuëram, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ĕar, I may be advised, or may I be advised.</i> <i>mon-ĕāris or -ĕāre, Thou mayst be advised,</i> <i>mon-eatur, He may be advised.</i> [etc.]</p> <p><i>P. mon-eamur, We may be advised.</i> <i>mon-eamini, Ye may be advised.</i> <i>mon-eantur, They may be advised.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus sim¹, I may have been advised.</i> <i>monitus sis, Thou mayst have been advised.</i> <i>monitus sit, He may have been advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti sīmus, We may have been advised.</i> <i>moniti sitis, Ye may have been advised.</i> <i>moniti sint, They may have been advised.</i></p>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. mon-ĕrer, I should or might be advised.</i> <i>mon-erĕris or -erĕre, Thou wouldst be advised, etc.</i> <i>mon-eretur, He would be advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. mon-erĕmur, We should be advised.</i> <i>mon-eremini, Ye would be advised.</i> <i>mon-erentur, They would be advised.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. monitus essem², I should have been advised.</i> <i>monitus esses, Thou wouldst have been advised.</i> <i>monitus esset, He would have been advised.</i></p> <p><i>P. moniti essemus, We should have been advised.</i> <i>moniti essetis, Ye would have been advised.</i> <i>moniti essent, They would have been advised.</i></p>

Future-Simple Tense. Wanting: see § 296.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *monitus sim*, *monĕrer*, and *monitus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or *fuerim*, etc.

² or *fuissem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	Sing. 2 Pers. mon-ēre, <i>be thou advised, mon-ētor, thou must be advised.</i>
	3 Pers. mon-ētor, <i>he must be advised.</i>
	Plur. 2 Pers. mon-ēmini, <i>be ye advised.</i>
	3 Pers. mon-entor, <i>they must be advised.</i>

Note 1. The forms monetor, monetor, monetor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, moneatur, *let him be advised, moneamur, let us be advised.*

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	mon-ēri, <i>to be advised.</i>
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	monitus esse or fuisse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
	FUTURE,	monitum iri, <i>to be about to be advised.</i>

Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being advised' may be rendered by dum with Present Indicative, as, dum monetur.
	PERFECT,	monitus, <i>advised, being advised, or having been advised.</i>
	FUTURE, GERUNDIVE,	(wanting). mon-endus, <i>that must be advised.</i>

§ 54. THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rēg-or, I am ruled, or am being ruled. reg-ēris or -ēre, Thou art ruled, etc. reg-itur, He is ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-īmur, We are ruled. reg-imini, Ye are ruled. reg-untur, They are ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE	<p><i>S. reg-ar, I shall be ruled. reg-ēris or -ēre, Thou wilt be ruled. reg-etur, He will be ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. reg-ēmur, We shall be ruled. reg-ēmini, Ye will be ruled. reg-entur, They will be ruled.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus sum ¹, I have been ruled. rectus es, Thou hast been ruled. rectus est, He has been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti sūmus, We have been ruled. recti estis, Ye have been ruled. recti sunt, They have been ruled.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. rectus ēro ², I shall have been ruled. rectus eris, Thou wilt have been ruled. rectus erit, He will have been ruled.</i></p> <p><i>P. recti erīmus, We shall have been ruled. recti eritis, Ye will have been ruled. recti erunt, They will have been ruled.</i></p>

¹ or fui, etc.² or fuero, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT
TENSE.

S. *reg-ēbar, I was being ruled, or I was ruled.*
reg-ēbāris or -ēbāre, Thou wast being ruled,
reg-ebatur, He was being ruled. [etc.
 P. *reg-ebamur, We were being ruled.*
reg-ebamini, Ye were being ruled.
reg-ebantur, They were being ruled.

AORIST
TENSE.

S. *rectus sum*¹, *I was ruled.*
rectus es, Thou wast ruled.
rectus est, He was ruled.
 P. *recti sūmus, We were ruled.*
recti estis, Ye were ruled.
recti sunt, They were ruled.

PLUPERFECT
TENSE.

S. *rectus eram*², *I had been ruled.*
rectus eras, Thou hadst been ruled.
rectus erat, He had been ruled.
 P. *recti erāmus, We had been ruled.*
recti eratis, Ye had been ruled.
recti erant, They had been ruled.

¹ or *fui*, etc.

² or *fuēram*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.	
PRESENT TENSE.	S. reg-ar, <i>I may be ruled, or may I be ruled.</i> reg-āris or -āre, <i>Thou mayst be ruled, etc.</i> reg-atur, <i>He may be ruled.</i> P. reg-amur, <i>We may be ruled.</i> reg-amīni, <i>Ye may be ruled.</i> reg-antur, <i>They may be ruled.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	S. rectus sim ¹ , <i>I may have been ruled.</i> rectus sis, <i>Thou mayst have been ruled.</i> rectus sit, <i>He may have been ruled.</i> P. recti simus, <i>We may have been ruled.</i> recti sitis, <i>Ye may have been ruled.</i> recti sint, <i>They may have been ruled.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	S. reg-ērer, <i>I should or might be ruled.</i> reg-ērēris or -erēre, <i>Thou wouldst be ruled,</i> [etc. reg-eretur, <i>He would be ruled.</i> P. reg-eremur, <i>We should be ruled.</i> reg-eremini, <i>Ye would be ruled.</i> reg-erentur, <i>They would be ruled.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	S. rectus essem ² , <i>I should have been ruled.</i> rectus esses, <i>Thou wouldst have been ruled.</i> rectus esset, <i>He would have been ruled.</i> P. recti essemus, <i>We should have been ruled.</i> recti essētis, <i>Ye would have been ruled.</i> recti essent, <i>They would have been ruled.</i>

Future-Simple Tense. Wanting: see § 296.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *rectus sim*, *regērer*, and *rectus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or *fuērim*, etc.

² or *fuissem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. reg-ěre, <i>be thou ruled</i> , reg-itor, <i>thou must be ruled</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-itor, <i>he must be ruled</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. reg-imini, <i>be ye ruled</i> .
	3 Pers. reg-untor, <i>they must be ruled</i> .

Note 1. The forms regitor, regitor, reguntor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, regatur, *let him be ruled*, regamur, *let us be ruled*.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,	} rēg-i, <i>to be ruled</i> .
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,	
		} rectus esse or fuisse, } <i>to have been ruled</i> .
	FUTURE,	
		rectum iri, <i>to be about to be ruled</i> .

Participles.	PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being ruled' may be rendered by <i>dum</i> with Present Indicative, as, <i>dum regitur</i> .
	PERFECT,	rectus, <i>ruled, being ruled, or having been ruled</i> .
	FUTURE,	(wanting).
	GERUNDIVE,	regendus, <i>that must be ruled</i> .

§ 55. FOURTH CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-ior, I am heard or am being heard.</i> <i>aud-iris or -ire, Thou art heard, etc.</i> <i>aud-itur, He is heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-imur, We are heard.</i> <i>aud-imini, Ye are heard.</i> <i>aud-iuntur, They are heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-iar, I shall be heard.</i> <i>aud-iēris or -iēre, Thou wilt be heard.</i> <i>aud-iētur, He will be heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-iēmur, We shall be heard.</i> <i>aud-iēmini, Ye will be heard.</i> <i>aud-iēntur, They will be heard.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audītus sum¹, I have been heard.</i> <i>auditus es, Thou hast been heard.</i> <i>auditus est, He has been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi sūmus, We have been heard.</i> <i>auditi estis, Ye have been heard.</i> <i>auditi sunt, They have been heard.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. audītus ero², I shall have been heard.</i> <i>auditus eris, Thou wilt have been heard.</i> <i>auditus erit, He will have been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi erīmus, We shall have been heard.</i> <i>auditi eritis, Ye will have been heard.</i> <i>auditi erunt, They will have been heard.</i></p>

¹ or fui, etc.² or fuēro, etc.

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. aud-īēbar, <i>I was being heard, or I was heard.</i> aud-iebāris or -iebāre, <i>Thou wast being heard.</i> aud-iebatur, <i>He was being heard.</i></p> <p>P. aud-iebamur, <i>We were being heard.</i> aud-iebamini, <i>Ye were being heard.</i> aud-iebantur, <i>They were being heard.</i></p>
AORIST TENSE.	<p>S. auditus sum¹, <i>I was heard.</i> auditus es, <i>Thou wast heard.</i> auditus est, <i>He was heard.</i></p> <p>P. auditi sūmus, <i>We were heard.</i> auditi estis, <i>Ye were heard.</i> auditi sunt, <i>They were heard.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p>S. auditus eram², <i>I had been heard.</i> auditus eras, <i>Thou hadst been heard.</i> auditus erat, <i>He had been heard.</i></p> <p>P. auditi erāmus, <i>We had been heard.</i> auditi erātis, <i>Ye had been heard.</i> auditi erant, <i>They had been heard.</i></p>
<p>¹ or fui, etc. ² or fuēram, etc</p>	

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īar, I may be heard, or may I be heard.</i> <i>aud-iāris or -iāre, Thou mayst be heard.</i> <i>aud-iatur, He may be heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. aud-iamur, We may be heard.</i> <i>aud-iamini, Ye may be heard.</i> <i>aud-iantur, They may be heard.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. auditus sim¹, I may have been heard.</i> <i>auditus sis, Thou mayst have been heard.</i> <i>auditus sit, He may have been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi simus, We may have been heard.</i> <i>auditi sītis, Ye may have been heard.</i> <i>auditi sint, They may have been heard.</i></p>

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. aud-īrer, I should or might be heard.</i> <i>aud-irēris or -irēre, Thou wouldst be heard,</i> <i>aud-iretur, He would be heard.</i> [etc.]</p> <p><i>P. aud-iremur, We should be heard.</i> <i>aud-iremini, Ye would be heard.</i> <i>aud-irentur, They would be heard.</i></p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. auditus essem², I should have been heard.</i> <i>auditus esses, Thou wouldst have been heard.</i> <i>auditus esset, He would have been heard.</i></p> <p><i>P. auditi essemus, We should have been heard.</i> <i>auditi essetis, Ye would have been heard.</i> <i>auditi essent, They would have been heard.</i></p>

Future-Simple Tense. Wanting: see § 296.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *auditus sim*, *audirer*, and *auditus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or *fuērim*, etc.

² or *fuissem*, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S. 2 Pers. aud-īre, <i>be thou heard</i> , aud-ītor, <i>thou must be heard</i> .
	3 Pers. aud-ītor, <i>he must be heard</i> .
	P. 2 Pers. aud-īmini, <i>be ye heard</i> .
	3 Pers. aud-iuntor, <i>they must be heard</i> .

Note 1. The forms auditor, auditor, audiuntor, are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense, as, audiatur, *let him be heard*, audiamur, *let us be heard*.

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Mood.	[PRESENT AND IMPERFECT,]	aud-īri, <i>to be heard</i> .
	[PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT,]	aud-ītus esse or } <i>to have been heard</i> . fuisse, }
	[FUTURE,	audītum iri, <i>to be about to be heard</i> .
Participles.	[PRESENT,	(wanting). The meaning 'whilst being heard' may be rendered by <i>dum</i> with Present Indicative, as, <i>dum auditor</i> .
	[PERFECT,	aud-ītus, <i>heard, being heard, or having been heard</i> .
	[FUTURE,	(wanting).
	[GERUNDIVE,	aud-iendus, <i>that must be heard</i> .

§ 56. COMPARATIVE TABLE OF ENDINGS OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

I. INDICATIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.									
<i>Tense.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>					<i>Passive Voice.</i>			
PRESENT.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud-	o, es, o, io,	as, et, is, is,	at, ētur, it, it,	ātis, ētis, ītis, ītis,	ant. ent. unt. iunt.	or, eor, or, ior,	āris(e), ēris(e), īris(e), īris(e),	ātur, ētur, itur, itur, āmur, ēmur, imur, imur, amīni, ēmīni, imīni, imīni,
FUTURE SIMPLE.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud-	ābo, ēbo, am, iam,	ābis, ēbis, es, ies,	ābit, ēbit, et, iet,	ābūtis, ēbūtis, ētis, iētis,	ābunt. ēbunt. ent. ient.	ābor, ēbor, ar, iar,	āberis(e), ēberis(e), eris(e), ieris(e),	ābītur, ēbītur, ētur, ītur, āmur, ēmur, imur, imur, ābimīni, ēbimīni, ēmīni, iēmīni,
PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audīv-	{ i, isti,		it,	imur, istis, erunt, or ēre.		Amātus Monītus Rectus Audītus	sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt. fui, fuisti, fuit, -i fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, or fuere.	
FUTURE PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audīv-	{ ēro, eris,		erit, eritis, erint.			Amātus Monītus Rectus Audītus	erō, eris, erit, -i erimus, eritis, erunt. fuero, fueris, fuerit, -i fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.	

2. INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*). Historic Tenses.

<i>Tense.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
IMPERFECT.	Am- Mon- Reg- Aud- ābam, ābās, ābat, ābāmus, ābātis, ābant. ēbam, ēbās, ēbat, ēbāmus, ēbātis, ēbant. ībam, ībās, ībat, ībāmus, ībātis, ībant.	ābar, ābāris(ē), ābātur, ābāmur, ābāmini, ābantur. ēbar, ēbāris(ē), ēbātur, ēbāmur, ēbāmini, ēbantur. ībar, ībāris(ē), ībātur, ībāmur, ībāmini, ībantur.
AORIST.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- i, isti, ite, imus, istis, erunt, or ēre.	Amātus Monitus Rectus Auditus sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt. Or fui, fuisti, fuit, -i fuimus, fuistis, fuerunt, or fuere.
PROPERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- eram, eras, erat, erāmus, erātis, erant.	Amātus Monitus Rectus Auditus eram, eras, erat, -i erāmus, erātis, erant. Or fueram, fueras, fuerat, -i fuerāmus, fuerātis, fuerant.

TABLE OF ENDINGS OF THE CONJUGATIONS (*continued*).

3. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. Primary Tenses.		
<i>Tenses.</i>	<i>Active Voice.</i>	<i>Passive Voice.</i>
PRESENT.	Am- em, es, et, ēmus, ētis, ent. Mon- eam, eas, eat, eāmus, eātis, eant. Reg- am, as, at, āmus, ātis, ant. Aud- iam, ias, iat, iāmus, iātis, iant.	er, ēris(e), ētur, ēmur, ēmini, entur. ear, eāris(e), eātur, eāmur, eāmini, eantur. ar, āris(e), ātur, āmur, āmini, antur. iar, iāris(e), iātur, iāmur, iāmini, iantur.
PERFECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- ērim, ēris, ērit, ērimus, eritis, erint.	Amātus } sim, sis, sit, -i simus, sītis, sint. Monitus } Rectus } Auditus } fuērim, fuēris, fuērit, fuērimus, fuēritis, fuērint. Or,
4. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. Historic Tenses.		
IMPER- FECT.	Am- ārem, āres, āret, āremus, āretis, ārent. Mon- ērem, ēres, ēret, ēremus, ēretis, ērent. Reg- ērem, ēres, ēret, ēremus, ēretis, ērent. Aud- irem, ires, iret, iremus, iretis, irent.	ārer, arēris(e), arētur, arēmur, arēmini, arēntur. ērer, ērēris(e), ērētur, ērēmur, ērēmini, ērēntur. īrer, irēris(e), irētur, irēmur, irēmini, irēntur.
PLUPER- FECT.	Amāv- Monu- Rex- Audiv- issem, isses, isset, issemus, issetis, issent.	Amātus } essem, esses, esset, -i essemus, essētis, essent. Monitus } Rectus } forem, fores, foret, -i foremus, foretis, forent. Auditus } Or, fuissē, fuissēs, fuisset, -i fuissēmus, fuissētis, fuissēnt.

5. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
	Am-Mon-Reg-Aud.	ā, āto, ēto, ēto, īto, īto.	āto, ēto, īto, īto.	āto, ēto, īto, īto.

6. INFINITIVE MOOD and PARTICIPLES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.	<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
	Pres. and Imperf.	am-āre. mon-ēre. reg-ēre. aud-īre.	Pres. and Imperf.	am-āri. mon-ēri. reg-ī. aud-īri.
PARTICIPLES.	<i>Future</i>		<i>Future</i>	
	am-āns. mon-ēns. reg-ēns. aud-īens.	amāturus esse. monīturus esse. recturus esse. audīturus esse.	amātus monītus rectus audītus	amātus monītus rectus audītus
GERUNDS AND SUPINES.	<i>Gerunds.</i>		<i>Gerundive.</i>	
	am-andum, andi, ando. mon-endum, endi, endo. reg-endum, endi, endo. aud-iendum, iendi, iendo.	amāt-um, u. monīt-um, u. rect-um, u. aud-ītum, u.	amātus. monītus. rectus. audītus.	amandus. monendus. regendus. audiendus.

§ 57. CONJUGATION OF A DEPONENT VERB,
THAT IS, A VERB WHICH IS PASSIVE IN
FORM BUT ACTIVE IN MEANING.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S. ūt-or, I use, am using, or do use.</i> <i>ut-ēris or -ēre, Thou usest, etc.</i> <i>ut-itur, He uses.</i></p> <p><i>P. ut-īmur, We use.</i> <i>ut-īmini, Ye use.</i> <i>ut-untur, They use.</i></p>
FUTURE- SIMPLE TENSE.	<p><i>S. ut-ar, I shall use.</i> <i>ut-ēris or -ēre, Thou wilt use.</i> <i>ut-etur, He will use.</i></p> <p><i>P. ut-ēmur, We shall use.</i> <i>ut-ēmini, Ye will use.</i> <i>ut-entur, They will use.</i></p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. ūsus sum ¹, I have used.</i> <i>usus es, Thou hast used.</i> <i>usus est, He has used.</i></p> <p><i>P. usi sumus, We have used.</i> <i>usi estis, Ye have used.</i> <i>usi sunt, They have used.</i></p>
FUTURE- PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S. usus ero ², I shall have used.</i> <i>usus eris, Thou wilt have used.</i> <i>usus erit, He will have used.</i></p> <p><i>P. usi erimus, We shall have used.</i> <i>usi eritis, Ye will have used.</i> <i>usi erunt, They will have used.</i></p>
<p>¹ or fui, etc. ² or fuēro, etc.</p>	

INDICATIVE MOOD (*continued*).

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT
TENSE.

S. ut-ēbar, *I was using, or I used.*
 ut-ēbāris or -ēbare, *Thou wast using, etc.*
 ut-ebatur, *He was using.*
P. ut-ebamur, *We were using.*
 ut-ebamini, *Ye were using.*
 ut-ebantur, *They were using.*

AORIST
TENSE.

S. usus sum¹, *I used.*
 usus es, *Thou usedst.*
 usus est, *He used.*
P. usi sumus, *We used.*
 usi estis, *Ye used.*
 usi sunt, *They used.*

PLUPERFECT
TENSE.

S. usus eram², *I had used.*
 usus eras, *Thou hadst used.*
 usus erat, *He had used.*
P. usi eramus, *We had used.*
 usi eratis, *Ye had used.*
 usi erant, *They had used.*

¹ or fui, etc.

² or fuēram, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ut-ar, <i>I may use</i>, or <i>may I use</i>, or <i>let me use</i>. ut-āris or -āre, <i>Thou mayst use</i>, etc. ut-atur, <i>He may use</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> ut-amur, <i>We may use</i>. ut-amini, <i>Ye may use</i>. ut-antur, <i>They may use</i>.</p>
PERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> usus sim¹, <i>I may have used</i>. usus sis, <i>Thou mayst have used</i>. usus sit, <i>He may have used</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> usi simus, <i>We may have used</i>. usi sitis, <i>Ye may have used</i>. usi sint, <i>They may have used</i>.</p>

Historic Tenses.

IMPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> ut-ērer, <i>I should or might use</i>. ut-ērēris or -ērēre, <i>Thou wouldst use</i>, etc. ut-erētur, <i>He would use</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> ut-erēmur, <i>We should use</i>. ut-erēmini, <i>Ye would use</i>. ut-erentur, <i>They would use</i>.</p>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<p><i>S.</i> usus essem¹, <i>I should or might have used</i>. usus esses, <i>Thou wouldst have used</i>, etc. usus esset, <i>He would have used</i>.</p> <p><i>P.</i> usi essemus, <i>We should have used</i>. usi essetis, <i>Ye would have used</i>. usi essent, <i>They would have used</i>.</p>

Future-Simple Tense. Usurus sim or essem.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *usus sim*, *uterer*, and *usus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or fuērim, etc.

² or fuisset, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT
TENSE.

- S. 2 Pers. ut-ĕre, *use thou*, ut-ĭtor, *thou must use*.
 3 Pers. ut-ĭtor, *he must use*.
 P. 2 Pers. ut-ĭmĭni, *use ye*.
 3 Pers. ut-untor, *they must use*.

Note 1. The forms utitor, utitor, utuntor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive
Mood.

- { PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, } ūt-i, *to use* (or *using*, in the sense of 'the act of using').
 { PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, } ūsus esse, or fuisse, } *to have used*.
 FUTURE, ūsūrus esse, *to be about to use*.

Gerunds.

- { ACCUSATIVE, } ut-endum, *using*.
 { GENITIVE, } ut-endi, *of using*.
 { DAT. ABL., } ut-endo, *for or by using*.

Supines.

- { in -um, } ūsum, *in order to use*.
 { in -u, } ūsu, *in using*.

Participles.

- { PRESENT, } ut-ens, *using* (declined like ingens).
 { PERFECT, } ūsus, *having used*.
 { FUTURE, } ūsūrus, *being about to use*.
 { GERUNDIVE, } ut-endus, *that must be used*.

SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Primary Tenses.

PRESENT TENSE.	<i>S. ut-ar, I may use, or may I use, or let me use.</i> <i>ut-āris or -āre, Thou mayst use, etc.</i> <i>ut-atur, He may use.</i> <i>P. ut-amur, We may use.</i> <i>ut-amini, Ye may use.</i> <i>ut-antur, They may use.</i>
PERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. usus sim¹, I may have used.</i> <i>usus sis, Thou mayst have used.</i> <i>usus sit, He may have used.</i> <i>P. usi simus, We may have used.</i> <i>usi sitis, Ye may have used.</i> <i>usi sint, They may have used.</i>
Historic Tenses.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. ut-ērer, I should or might use.</i> <i>ut-ērēris or -ērēre, Thou wouldst use, etc.</i> <i>ut-erētur, He would use.</i> <i>P. ut-erēmur, We should use.</i> <i>ut-erēmini, Ye would use.</i> <i>ut-erentur, They would use.</i>
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	<i>S. usus essem¹, I should or might have used.</i> <i>usus esses, Thou wouldst have used, etc.</i> <i>usus esset, He would have used.</i> <i>P. usi essemus, We should have used.</i> <i>usi essetis, Ye would have used.</i> <i>usi essent, They would have used.</i>

Future-Simple Tense. Usurus sim or essem.

Aorist Tense. Rendered variously by *usus sim, uterer*, and *usus essem*. See §§ 205, 206.

¹ or fuērim, etc.

² or fuisset, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	S.	2 Pers. ut-ĕre, <i>use thou</i> , ut-ĭtor, <i>thou must use</i> .
	3 Pers.	ut-ĭtor, <i>he must use</i> .
	P.	2 Pers. ut-ĭmĭni, <i>use ye</i> .
	3 Pers.	ut-untor, <i>they must use</i> .

Note 1. The forms utitor, utitor, utuntor are sometimes reckoned as Future Imperatives.

Note 2. The Present Subjunctive is often used in a Present Imperative sense.

VERB INFINITIVE.

Infinitive Mood.	PRESENT AND IMPERFECT, }	ūt-i, <i>to use</i> (or <i>using</i> , in the sense of 'the act of using').
	PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT, }	ūsus esse, or fuisse, } <i>to have used</i> .
	FUTURE,	ūsūrus esse, <i>to be about to use</i> .

Gerunds.	ACCUSATIVE,	ut-endum, <i>using</i> .
	GENITIVE,	ut-endi, <i>of using</i> .
	DAT. ABL.,	ut-endo, <i>for or by using</i> .

Supines.	in -um,	ūsūm, <i>in order to use</i> .
	in -u,	ūsū, <i>in using</i> .

Participles.	PRESENT,	ut-ens, <i>using</i> (declined like ingens).
	PERFECT,	ūsus, <i>having used</i> .
	FUTURE,	ūsūrus, <i>being about to use</i> .
	GERUNDIVE,	ut-endus, <i>that must be used</i> .

Note on Deponent Verbs. There are Four Conjugations of Deponent Verbs, as, *venor*, Inf. *venāri*, *I hunt*, *vereor*, Inf. *verēri* *I fear*, *utor*, Inf. *uti*, *I use*, and *partior*, Inf. *partīri*, *I divide*, which are conjugated like *amor*, *moneor*, *regor*, and *audior* respectively.

Deponent Participles used Passively. Many Deponent Perfect Participles are used Passively as well as Actively, as *comitatus*, *having accompanied and accompanied*, from *comitor*; *oblitus*, *having forgotten and forgotten*, from *obliviscor*.

Deponents in -ior of the Third Conjugation. The Verbs *gradior*, *I walk*, *morior*, *I die*, and *pator*, *I suffer*, belong to the Third Conjugation, and drop the *i* before *i* and short *ēr*, as

INDIC. PRES.	{	pati-or.
		pat-ēris <i>for</i> pati-ēris.
		pat-itur <i>for</i> pati-itur.
		pat-īmur <i>for</i> pati-īmur.
		pat-īmini <i>for</i> pati-īmini.
		pati-untur.
IMPER. PRES.		pat-ēre <i>for</i> pati-ēre.
SUBJ. IMPERF.		pat-ērer <i>for</i> pati-ērer.
INF. PRES.		pat-i <i>for</i> pati-i.

Note on the Verbs orior and potior. The Verbs *orior* and *potior* belong to the Fourth Conjugation of Deponents, but in some tenses they have forms borrowed from the Third, as,

INDIC. PRES.	{	2 p. S. orēris.
		3 p. S. oritur.
		1 p. Pl. orīmur.
PART. FUT.		oriturus.

INDIC. PRES.	{	3 p. S. potitur <i>or</i> potitur.
		1 p. Pl. potīmur <i>or</i> potimur.
		1 p. S. potērer <i>or</i> potirer.
SUBJ. IMPERF.	{	2 p. S. potērēris <i>or</i> potirēris.
		3 p. S. potērētur <i>or</i> potirētur.
		1 p. Pl. potērēmur <i>or</i> potirēmur.
		2 p. Pl. potērēmini <i>or</i> potirēmini.
		3 p. Pl. potērentur <i>or</i> potirentur.

§ 58. TABLE SHOWING A COMPARISON OF THE LATIN TENSES WITH THE CORRESPONDING TENSES IN GREEK, FRENCH, GERMAN, AND ENGLISH.

TENSES.	GREEK.	LATIN.	FRENCH.	GERMAN.	ENGLISH.
PRESENT.	Indefinite, or Aorist.				I love.
	Imperfect, or Continuous.	amo	j'aime	Ich liebe	I am loving.
	Perfect, or Completed.	amavi	j'ai aimé	Ich habe geliebt	I have loved.
FUTURE.	Indefinite.				I shall love.
	Imperfect.	amabo	j'aimerai	Ich werde lieben	I shall be loving.
	Perfect.	amavero	j'aurai aimé	Ich werde geliebt haben	I shall have loved.
PAST.	Indefinite.	amavi	j'aimai	Ich liebte	I loved.
	Imperfect.	amabam	j'aimais		I was loving.
	Perfect.	amaveram	j'avais aimé	Ich hatte geliebt	I had loved.

§ 59. CONJUGATION OF THE ANOMALOUS VERBS.

1. Possum [potis-sum], *to be able*.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	possum, pōt-es, pot-est, pos-sūmus, pot-estis, pos-sunt.
FUT. SIMP.	pot-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erunt.
PERFECT.	potu-i, -isti, -it, -īmus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.
FUT. PERF.	potu-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	pot-eram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	potu-eram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	pos-sim, -sis, -sit, -sīmus, -sitis, -sint.
PERFECT.	potu-ērim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	pos-sem, -ses, -set, -sēmus, -setis, -sent.
PLUPERF.	potu-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	posse.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	potu-isse.
PRESENT PARTICIPLE.	(wanting ¹).

Note. 'Possum' has no Imperative Mood.

-
2. { Volo, *to wish, be willing*.
 { Nolo [non volo], *to be unwilling*.
 { Malo [magis volo], *to wish rather, prefer*.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	{ vōlo, vis, vult, volūmus, vultis, volunt. { nōlo, nonvis, nonvult, nolūmus, nonvultis, nolunt. { mālō, mavis, mavult, malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
FUT. SIMP.	{ vōl- { nōl- } am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent. { māl-

¹ The form potens is only used as an Adjective, *powerful*.

PERFECT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{völü-} \\ \text{nölu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\} \text{i, -isti, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.}$

FUT. PERF. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ēro, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint.}$

IMPERFECT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vol-} \\ \text{nol-} \\ \text{mal-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ēbam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.}$

AORIST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ēram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.}$

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vel-} \\ \text{nol-} \\ \text{mal-} \end{array} \right\} \text{im, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -int.}$

PERFECT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\} \text{ērim, -eris, -erit, -erimus, -eritis, -erint.}$

IMPERFECT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vell-} \\ \text{noll-} \\ \text{mall-} \end{array} \right\} \text{em, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.}$

PLUPERF. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{volu-} \\ \text{nolu-} \\ \text{malu-} \end{array} \right\} \text{issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.}$

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{S. 2 Pers. noli,} \\ \text{3 Pers.} \\ \text{P. 2 Pers. nolite,} \\ \text{3 Pers.} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{nolito.} \\ \text{nolito.} \\ \text{nolitōte.} \\ \text{nolunto.} \end{array}$

Note. 'Volo' and 'malo' have no Imperative Mood.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{velle.} \\ \text{nolle.} \\ \text{malle.} \end{array} \right.$

PERF. AND PLUPERF. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{voluisse.} \\ \text{noluisse.} \\ \text{maluisse.} \end{array} \right.$

GERUNDS.	{ volen-dum, -di, -do. nolen-dum, -di, -do. malen-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	·(wanting).
PRES. PARTICIPLES.	{ volens. nolens. _____

3. *Fero, to bear.***Indicative Mood.**

PRESENT.	fēro, fers, fert, ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
FUT. SIMP.	fer-am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT.	tūl-i, -isti, -it, -īmus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.
FUT. PERF.	tul-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	ferē-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	tul-ēram, -ēras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	fer-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	tul-ērim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	fer-rem, -res, -ret, -rēmus, -retis, -rent.
PLUPERF.	tul-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	{	S. 2 Pers. fer,	ferto.
		3 Pers.	ferto.
		P. 2 Pers. ferte,	fertōte.
		3 Pers.	ferunto.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF.	ferre.
PERF. AND PLUPERF.	tul-isse.
FUTURE.	lāturus esse.
GERUNDS.	feren-dum, -di, -do.
SUPINES.	lātum, latu.
PRES. PARTICIPLE.	ferens.
FUT. PARTICIPLE.	laturus.

4. *Feror, to be borne.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. *fēror, ferris or ferre, fertur, ferimur, ferimīni, feruntur.*FUT. SIMP. *fer-ar, -ēris or -ēre, -etur, -emur, -emini, -entur.*PERFECT. *lat-us sum, es, est, -i sūmus, estis, sunt.*FUT. PERF. *lat-us ēro, eris, erit, -i erīmus, eritis, erunt.*IMPERFECT. *fer-ēbar, -ebāris or -ebāre, -ebatur, -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.*

AORIST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. *lat-us ēram, eras, erat, -i eramus, eratis. erant.*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT. *fer-ar, -āris or -āre, -atur, -amur, -amini, -antur.*PERFECT. *lat-us sim, sis, sit, -i simus, sitis, sint.*IMPERFECT. *fer-rer, -rēris or -rēre, -retur, -remur, -remīni, -rentur.*PLUPERF. *lat-us essem, esses, esset, -i essemus, essetis, essent.*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	{	S. 2 Pers. <i>ferre,</i>	<i>fertor.</i>
		3 Pers.	<i>fertor.</i>
		P. 2 Pers. <i>ferimini.</i>	
		3 Pers.	<i>feruntor.</i>

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF., *ferri*; PERF. AND PLUPERF., *lātus esse*;
 FUTURE, *lātum iri*; PERF. PARTICIPLE, *lātus*; GERUNDIVE,
ferendus.

5. *Eo, to go.*

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT. *eo, is, it, imus, itis, eunt.*FUT. SIMP. *i-bo, -bis, -bit, -bīmus, -bitis, -bunt.*PERFECT. *iv-i, -isti, -it, -īmus, -istis, -ērunt or -ēre.*FUT. PERF. *iv-ēro, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -eritis, -erint.*IMPERFECT. *i-bam, -bas, -bat, -bāmus, -batis, -bant.*

AORIST. Same in form as Perfect.

PLUPERF. *iv-ēram, -eras, -erat, -erāmus, -eratis, -erant.*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	e-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	iv-ērim, -eris, -erit, -erīmus, -erītis, -erint.
IMPERFECT.	i-rem, -res, -ret, -rēmus, -retis, -rent.
PLUPERF.	iv-issem, -isses, -isset, -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	{	S. 2 Pers. I,	īto.
		3 Pers.	īto.
	{	P. 2 Pers. īte,	ītōte.
		3 Pers.	eunto.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF., ire; PERF. AND PLUPERF., ivisse; FUTURE, itūrus esse; GERUNDS, eun-dum, -di, -do; SUPINES, itum, itū; PRES. PARTICIPLE, iens [Gen. eunt-is]; FUT. PARTICIPLE, iturus.

Note. The compounds of eo, as, abeo, adeo, prodeo, etc., prefer -ii to -ivi in the Perfect. Veneo, *I am for sale*, has no Supine. Queo, *I am able*, and nequeo, *I am unable*, are conjugated like eo, but have no Imperative or Gerunds.

6. Fīo, to be made, to become.

Indicative Mood.

PRESENT.	fīo, fis, fit, (fīmus), (fītis), fiunt.
FUT. SIMP.	fi-am, -es, -et, -ēmus, -etis, -ent.
PERFECT.	fact-us sum, es, est, -i sumus, estis, sunt.
FUT. PERF.	fact-us ēro, eris, erit, -i erīmus, eritis, erunt.
IMPERFECT.	fi-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat, -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.
AORIST.	Same in form as Perfect.
PLUPERF.	fact-us ēram, eras, erat, -i erāmus, eratis, erant.

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	fi-am, -as, -at, -āmus, -atis, -ant.
PERFECT.	fact-us sim, sis, sit, -i sīmus, sitis, sint.
IMPERFECT.	fi-erem, -eres, -eret, -erēmus, -eretis, -erent.
PLUPERF.	fact-us essem, esses, esset, -i essēmus, essetis, essent.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT, S. 2 Pers. *fī*; P. 2 Pers. *fite*.

Infinitive Mood.

PRES. AND IMPERF., *fīeri*; PERF. AND PLUPERF., *factus esse*; FUTURE, *factum iri*; PERF. PARTICIPLE, *factus*; GERUNDIVE, *faciendus*.*Note.* 'Fio' is the Passive of the Verb *facio*, *to make*.

7. The Verb
- ēdo*
- ,
- I eat*
- , has irregular forms in certain tenses.

INDIC. PRES. *ēdo*, *ēdis* or *es*, *ēdit* or *est*, *ēdīmus*, *ēdītis* or *estis*, *ēdunt*.SUBJ. PRES. { *edam*, *edas*, *edat*, etc.; or
 { *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, etc.IMPERF. { *edērem*, *edēres*, *edēret*, etc.; or
 { *essem*, *esses*, *esset*, etc.IMPERATIVE. { *Sing.* *ēdē*, *ēdīto* or *esto*.
 { *Plur.* *ēdīte* or *este*, *ēdītote* or *estote*, *edunto*.INFIN. PRES. *edēre* or *esse*.In the Passive, *estur* is found for *ēdītur*, and *essetur* for *ederetur*.

Table of the chief tenses of the Anomalous Verbs.

	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
1.	Possum, posse,		potui,		<i>to be able.</i>
2.	{ Volo, velle,		volui,		<i>to be willing.</i>
	{ Nolo, nolle,		nolui,		<i>to be unwilling.</i>
3.	{ Mālo, malle,		malui,		<i>to wish rather.</i>
	{ Fero, ferre,		tuli,	lātum,	<i>to bear</i> ¹ .
4.	Feror, ferri,		latus sum,		<i>to be borne.</i>
5.	Eo, ire,		ivi or ii,	ītum,	<i>to go. [become.</i>
6.	Fio, fieri,		factus sum,		<i>to be made or</i>
7.	Edo, edere or esse,		ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>
8.	{ Quēo, quire,		quīvi,	quītum,	<i>to be able.</i>
	{ Nequēo, nequire,		nequīvi,	nequītum,	<i>to be unable.</i>

¹ In the following compounds of *fero* the Preposition often undergoes assimilation (§ 182) in one or other of the principal parts of the Verb.

ab-fero	makes	aufero,	abstuli,	ablatum,	<i>take away.</i>
ad-fero	„	affero,	attuli,	allatum,	<i>bring to.</i>
con-fero	„	confero,	contuli,	collatum,	<i>bring together.</i>
dis-fero	„	differo,	distuli,	dilatatum,	<i>carry asunder.</i>
ex-fero	„	effero,	extuli,	elatum,	<i>carry forth.</i>
in-fero	„	infero,	intuli,	illatum,	<i>bring to or into.</i>
ob-fero	„	offero,	obtuli,	oblatum,	<i>bring before.</i>
sub-fero	„	suffero,	sustuli,	sublatum,	<i>hold under or up.</i>

§ 60. INTERROGATIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

(a) *Use of -nē.* The Indicative and Subjunctive Moods may be made Interrogative (i. e. made to express a question) by adding the Particle **-nē** to the various Numbers and Persons, as,

INDIC. PRESENT. amo-nē, *do I love?*
amas-nē, *dost thou love?* etc.

FUTURE. amabo-nē, *shall I love?*
amabis-nē, *wilt thou love?* etc.

and so on throughout the Tenses.

Note. For videsnē, audisnē, etc., we sometimes find the forms vidēn, audīn, etc., in Poetry.

(b) *Position of -nē.* The Particle **-ne** is not necessarily attached to the *Verb* in an Interrogative sentence. It is usually added to the first word in the sentence, as, puernē amat, *does the boy love?*

(c) *Use of num.* When the answer 'no' is expected **num** is used in a question instead of **-nē**, as, num amat, *he does not love, does he?*

(d) *Use of nonnē.* When the answer 'yes' is expected **nonne** is used in a question, as, nonnē amo, *do I not love?* or, *I love, do I not?*

(e) *Double Questions.* If the word *or* occurs in a question to which the answer 'yes' or 'no' is expected, it is translated by **an**, and one of the Particles **utrum**, **num**, **-ne** must be used for the first part of the question, as,

utrum servus es an liber?	} <i>Are you a slave or a free man?</i> ¹
num servus es an liber?	
servusnē es an liber?	

¹ Literally 'Whether are you a slave or a free man?' but the English Interrogative *whether* is now seldom used in *direct* questions. It appears more frequently in older English, as, Mark ii. 9, 'Whether is it easier to say to the sick of the palsy, Thy sins be forgiven thee; or to say, Arise, and take up thy bed and walk?'

(f) *Interrogative Pronouns*, etc. The chief Interrogative Pronouns and Particles in Latin are :—

qualis, <i>of what sort?</i>	cur, <i>why?</i>
quantus, <i>how great?</i>	quoties, <i>how often?</i>
uter, <i>which of two?</i>	quare, <i>wherefore?</i>
quis, <i>who?</i>	quam, <i>how?</i>
quot, <i>how many?</i>	quomodo, <i>how?</i>
quōtus, <i>which in numerical order?</i>	num, <i>whether?</i>
unde, <i>whence?</i>	-nē, <i>whether?</i>
ubi, <i>where?</i>	ut, <i>how?</i>
quando, <i>when?</i>	an, <i>or whether?</i>
	utrum, <i>whether of the two?</i>

NOTES ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

§ 61. **Third Person Singular.** The Pronouns *she* and *it* are used, as well as *he*, to translate the 3rd Person Singular of the Verb. Thus *amat* may mean '*he, she, or it loves.*' In Tenses compounded of a Participle and the Verb *sum* the termination of the Participle will vary according to the Gender of the person or thing spoken of, as,

amatus est, He has been loved.

amata est, She has been loved.

amatum est, It has been loved.

§ 62. **Impersonal Verbs.** Certain Verbs are found only in the 3rd Person Singular, and have the word *it* for their apparent Nominative in English, as, *licet, it is permitted.* These are called Impersonal Verbs¹.

§ 63. **Present Indicative.** A Present Indicative, as *amo*, may be translated *I love, I am loving, or I do love.*

¹ A list of the chief Impersonals is given in § 78.

The sign *do* is seldom used affirmatively except when emphasis is required, but it constantly occurs in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as, *non amo, I do not love; amonē, do I love?*

§ 64. **Imperfect Indicative.** An Imperfect Indicative, as *amabam*, may be translated *I was loving, I loved, I used to love, or I began to love.* The translation *I loved* can only be used when the meaning is *I was loving at the time*, a sense which is often loosely expressed by the English Past Tense.

§ 65. **Aorist Indicative.** The sign *did* is seldom used affirmatively, except for the sake of emphasis, but it constantly occurs in the Negative and Interrogative forms, as *non amavi, I did not love*, etc.

§ 66. **Present Subjunctive.** This Tense admits of many translations. Thus *amem* means *I may, would, or should love, may I love, and let me love*: and, further, it has often to be translated as a Present Indicative, *I love, I am loving, or I do love*, when it occurs in dependent or subordinate sentences. Thus, *quum amem* is expressed in English by *since I love*.

§ 67. **Other Subjunctive Tenses.** What has been remarked of the Present holds good with respect to all the other Subjunctive Tenses, viz. that they frequently have to be translated by the corresponding Tense of the Indicative, and not by the signs *would, would have*, etc. Thus, *quum audissem* does not mean *when I should have heard*, but *when I had heard*.

§ 68. **Contraction in the Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.** Perfects ending in *-vi*, and the Tenses formed from them, may suffer contraction in all Conjugations, the letter *v* being omitted, e. g.—

Conj. 1. Amâsti *for* amavisti; amâssent *for* amavissent.

Conj. 2. Summôsses *for* summovisses.

Conj. 3. Nôrunt *for* novērunt; nôsti *for* novisti.

Conj. 4. Audisti *for* audivisti. In this Conjugation there is also a form produced by throwing out the *v*, without any contraction of vowels, as Perf. audii *for* audiui. This form is also found in certain Verbs of the Third Conjugation, as, peto, cupio, etc., which have Perfect in *-vi*, as, petii *for* petivi.

Note 1. This contraction is not allowed before *-re* in the 3rd Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative. We cannot say amâre *for* amavere.

Note 2. Other contractions are, compostus, dixti, extinxem, surrexe, *for* compositus, dixisti, extinxissem, surrexisse. Faxo, faxim, are for fecero, fecerim.

§ 69. Old Latin Forms sometimes used in Poetry.

(a) In the Pres. Infin. Pass. *-ier* was used for *-i*, as, amariet *for* amari.

(b) In the Imperf. Indic. of 4th Conjugation *e* was dropped, as, audibam *for* audiebam.

(c) In the Fut. Simp. of 4th Conjugation the regular forms *-ibo* and *-ibor* were used, as, audibo, audibor. Afterwards these forms were replaced by forms proper to the 3rd Conjugation, as, audiam, audiar.

(d) The Subj. Pres. in the 1st and 3rd Conjugations sometimes ended in *-im*, as, duim, *let me give*, for dem; edim, *let me eat*, for edam.

§ 70. Note on certain Imperatives. Facio, fero, dico, and duco¹, make in the Imperative Present fâc, fêr dîc, dūc. Scio, *I know*, has only scito, never sci, for Imperative.

§ 71. Note on the termination '*-re*' for '*-ris*.' The use of *-re* for *-ris* as the termination of the 2nd Pers. Sing. in

¹ Make, bear, say, lead.

the Passive Voice is common in all the Tenses except the Present Indicative, where it might be mistaken for the Infinitive Active or Imperative Passive, as, *amare*.

§ 72. **Gerundive in '-undus.'** The gerundives of the 3rd and 4th Conjugations are sometimes formed in **-undus** instead of **-endus**, especially when *i* precedes, as *potiundus*, *capiundus*.

§ 73. **The Periphrastic Conjugation.** The Future Active Participle may be coupled with all the Tenses of the Verb **sum**, and thus a new Active Conjugation, called the Periphrastic, is formed, indicating that a person *has a mind to do a thing* or *is upon the point of doing it*, e.g. *amaturus sum, I am about to love*; *amaturus eram, I was about to love*.

In the same way the Gerundive may be coupled with the Tenses of 'sum' to form a Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, as, *amandus sum, I ought to be loved* or *I must be loved*; *amandus eram, I ought to have been loved*, etc.

DEFECTIVE AND OTHER VERBS.

§ 74. Defective Verbs are those of which only certain Moods, Tenses, or Persons are found; e.g.—

(a) **Aio, I say or affirm.**

Indic. Pres.	Aio,	āis,	ait,			aiunt.
„ Imperf.	AI-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat,	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
Subj. Pres.		aīas,	aīat,			aīant.

(b) **Inquam, I say.**

Indic. Pres.	Inquam,	inquīs,	inquīt,	inquīmus,	inquītis,	inquīunt
„ Imperf.	Inquiebat.			Perf. Inquisti,	inquit.	
„ Fut.				inquēs,	inquēt.	
Imperat. Pres.				inquē,	inquīto,	inquēte.

- (c) *Coepi*, *I have begun*, or *I begin*, *memini*, *I remember*, and *odi*, *I hate*, have, for the most part, only those parts of the Verb which are formed from the Perfect Tense, e. g.

Indic. Perf.	coepi, coepisti, coepit, etc.
„ Pluperf.	coeperam.
„ Fut. Perf.	coepero.
Subj. Perf.	coeperim.
„ Pluperf.	coepissem.
Inf. Perf. and Pluperf.	coepisse.

Note. *Coepi* and *odi* have also a Perf. Part. *coeptus*, *osus*, and a Fut. Part. *coepturus*, *ösurus*. *Memini*, has an Imperative *memento*, Plur. *mementote*.

- (d) *Fari*, *to speak*, has *fatur*, *he speaks*, *fabor*, *I shall speak*, and *fārē*, *speak thou*, with Participles *fantem* (no Nominative), *fātus*, *fandus*, Gerunds *fandi*, *fando*, and Supine *fatū*.

- (e) The following Imperatives:

Āvē (or *hāvē*), *āvete*, *hail*. Infin. *āvēre*.

Salvē, *salvētē*, *hail*. Infin. *salvēre*.

Cēdō, *cēditē* (or *cettē*), *give me*.

Apāgē, *āpāgītē*, *begone*.

§ 75. **Derived Verbs.** Many Verbs are derived either from other Verbs or from Nouns.

Those chiefly derived from Verbs are of four kinds, Inceptive, Desiderative, Frequentative, and Diminutive.

(a) **Inceptive** Verbs signify 'to begin to do a thing,' and end in *-sco*, as, *calesco*, *I begin to be warm*, *grow warm* (from *caleo*), *tenerasco*, *I grow tender* (from *tener*).

(b) **Desiderative** Verbs signify 'to desire to do a thing,' and end in *-urio*, as, *ēsūrio*, *I wish to eat*, or *I am hungry* (from *ēdo*).

(c) **Frequentative Verbs** signify 'to do a thing frequently,' and end in -so, -to, and -ito, as, pulso (from pello, *I drive*), canto (from cano, *I sing*), and clamito (from clamo, *I shout*).

(d) **Diminutive Verbs** signify 'to do a little thing,' and end in -illo, as, cantillo, *I sing a little song* (from cano).

Verbs derived from Nouns belong usually to the First Conjugation if Transitive, and to the Second if Intransitive, as, fraudāre, *to deceive* [from fraus, *deceit*], albēre, *to be white* [from albus, *white*].

§ 76. **Semi-Deponent (or Neuter Passive) Verbs.** These are audeo, fido, gaudeo, and soleo¹. They have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, as, audeo, ausus sum; fido, fisus sum; gaudeo, gavisus sum; soleo, solitus sum.

§ 77. **Quasi-Passive (or Neutral Passive) Verbs.** These are vāpūlo, vēnēo, līcēo, exūlo, and fio². They are Active in form but Passive in meaning.

§ 78. **Impersonal Verbs.** The chief Impersonal Verbs are the following. They are of the Second Conjugation, and being only found in the 3rd Person Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive Mood, may be called Unipersonals.

Pres.	Perf.	Infin.
libet, (lubet),	libūit or libitum est,	libēre, <i>it pleases.</i>
licet,	licūit or licitum est,	licēre, <i>it is lawful.</i>
liquet,	licūit,	liquēre, <i>it is clear.</i>
mīseret,	mīserūit or mīseritum est,	mīserēre, <i>it moves to pity.</i>
oportet,	oportuit,	oportēre, <i>it behoves or is necessary.</i>
pīget,	pīgūit or pigitum est,	pīgēre, <i>it troubles.</i>

¹ Dare, trust, rejoice, am accustomed.

² Am beaten, am for sale, am put up to auction, am banished, am made.

Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
paenitet,	paenituit,	paenitēre, <i>it repents.</i>
pūdet,	pūdūt or pudītum est,	pudēre, <i>it shames.</i>
taedet,	taedūt or pertaesum est,	taedēre, <i>it wearies.</i>

§ 79. The above Verbs are, for the most part, only found in the Impersonal form. But many completely conjugated Verbs are used impersonally, as, juvo, *I assist*, which has juvat, meaning *it delights*, with many others, e. g.

Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
accēdit,	accessit,	accedēre, <i>it is added.</i>
accīdit,	accīdit,	accidēre, <i>it happens.</i>
constat,	constitit,	constāre, <i>it is well known.</i>
convēnit,	convēnit,	convenīre, <i>it suits.</i>
dēcet,	dēcūt,	dēcēre, <i>it becomes or seems.</i>
dēdēcet,	dēdēcūt,	dēdēcēre, <i>it misbecomes.</i>
fit,	factum est, fieri,	<i>it comes to pass.</i>

Together with certain Verbs denoting change of weather, as, pluit, *it rains*, fulminat, *it lightens*, tonat, *it thunders*, etc.

§ 80. Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice, as, sto, *I stand*, statur, *it is stood* or *a stand is made*. Hence statur a me=*it is stood by me*=*I stand*.

PARTICLES.

§ 81. **Adverbs.** These may express Place, Time, Manner, or Number, as, eo, *thither*, tunc, *then*, sapienter, *wisely*, bis, *twice*.

§ 82. **Derivation of Adverbs.** Most Adverbs are formed from Adjectives. Thus,

From Adjectives in *-us* are formed Adverbs in *-ē*, and (less commonly) *-o*; as dignē, *worthily*, from dignus, *worthy*; subito, *suddenly*, from subitus, *sudden*.

From Adjectives of two terminations in *-is*, *-us*, *-x*, &c.,

are formed Adverbs in *-iter* or *-ter*, as *feliciter*, *happily*, from *felix*, *happy*; *libenter*, *willingly*, from *libens*, *willing*.

Adjectives in *-us* and *-is* often use their Neuter¹ Adverbially, as *horrendum stridens*, *sounding horribly*; *dulcē ridens*, *smiling sweetly*. This is chiefly a Poetic usage.

There is also a termination in *-im*, chiefly from Participles, as *separatim*, *separately*; and in *-itus*, as *divinitus*, *divinely*.

Adverbs are also formed from Pronouns; thus from *hic*, *this*, are derived the Adverbs *hic*, *here*, *huc*, *hither*, and *hinc*, *from hence*; from *qui*, *who* or *which*, are derived *quā*, *where*, and *quo*, *whither*, etc.

For comparison of Adverbs, see §§ 28 and 162 (d).

§ 83. **Prepositions.** For a list of the Latin Prepositions see §§ 111 and 122, and for a full account of their usual meanings, with Examples, see §§ 318-363.

§ 84. **Conjunctions.** These are of two kinds, viz.—

(i.) **Coordinative**, which simply link together words, phrases, or clauses, and do not influence the Mood of the Verb. They are,

(a) *Copulative*, *et*, *-que*, *ac*, *atque*, *and*; *nec* or *neque*, *and not*, *nor*.

(b) *Disjunctive*, *aut*, *vel*, *-ve*, *either*; *sive*, *whether*.

(c) *Adversative*, *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, *vero*, *ceterum*, *at*, *but*.

Note. Sentences linked together by the above Conjunctions are called Coordinate Sentences.

(ii.) **Subordinative**, which introduce Subordinate Clauses (§ 94). The chief kinds are as follow. Those marked * are almost always found with a Subjunctive.

¹ Masculine and Feminine Adjectives are also used Adverbially, as, *invitus* (or *invita*) *Romam migravit*, *he* (or *she*) *has unwillingly removed to Rome*.

Final. Ut*, *in order that*, quo*, *in order that*, nē*, *lest, in order that . . . not*, quominus*, quin*, *in order that . . . not*.

Consecutive. Ut*, *so that*, quin*, *that . . . not*.

Temporal. Quum, ubi, ut, *when*; donec, dum, quoad, *whilst, until*; antequam, priusquam, *before that*; postquam, *after that*; simul, simul ac, *as soon as*; quoties, *as often as*.

Causal. Quum*, quoniam, quandōquidem, *since*; quod, quia, *because*.

Conditional. Si, *if*, nisi, *if not, unless*: dum*, dummodo*, *provided that*.

Concessive. Etsi, licet*, quamquam, quamvis*, quum*, ut, *although*.

Comparative. Quasi*, tanquam*, tanquam si*, *as if, as though*.

§ 85. **Interjections.** Interjections express joy, as, io, *hail*; grief, as, heu or eheu, *alas*! astonishment, as, en or ecce, *lo*! and calling or summoning, as heus, *ho*!

A SHORT CATECHISM

OF

LATIN SYNTAX.

Elementary Rules for Construing.

§ 86. *Q.* How do we begin the translation of a Latin sentence?

A. First look for the Finite Verb, and then for its Subject.

§ 87. *Q.* Will *any* Finite Verb do that happens to be in the sentence?

A. No. The Finite Verb of the Sentence is *never* to be looked for in a clause introduced by the Relative *qui, quae, quod*, or by a Subordinative Conjunction, *as, quum, when, ut, that, ne, lest, si, if, etsi, although*, etc.

§ 88. *Q.* What do you mean by 'the Subject'?

A. The Subject is the person or thing *of which something is said*. Thus in the sentence *Caesar scribit*, *Caesar writes*, it is said of Caesar that he writes; hence Caesar is called the Subject of the sentence.

Note. That which is said of the Subject is called the *Predicate*.

§ 89. *Q.* How do we find the Subject?

A. It is, as a rule, a Noun¹ in the Nominative Case.² If

¹ Under the head of 'Nouns' are also included words or phrases equivalent to Nouns, e. g. an Infinitive Mood, an Accusative and Infinitive, an Adjective used Substantively, or a whole clause introduced by a Conjunction.

² The Subject of an Infinitive Mood is put in the Accusative. See § 108.

there is no Nominative expressed, the Subject is one of the Pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you,* or *they*, contained in the Verb-ending.

Varieties of the Sentence.

§ 90. Q. How many kinds of simple or direct sentence (*Oratio Recta*) are there?

A. Three, namely:

- (a) The Statement, as, *Caesar scribit, Caesar is writing.*
- (b) The Question, as, *Scribitne Caesar? Is Caesar writing?*
- (c) The Command or Request, as, *Scribe, Caesar, Write, O Caesar; Scribat Caesar, Let Caesar write.*

§ 91. Q. What is an Oblique, Dependent, or Indirect Sentence (*Oratio Obliqua*)?

A. A Statement, Question, or Command, which forms the Subject or Object (see § 39) of another Verb, as,

Ait Caesarem scribere, He says that Caesar is writing. Scribatne Caesar nostrā nihil interest, Whether Caesar is writing is of no importance to us, or it is of no importance to us whether Caesar is writing.

In the first example the words *Caesarem scribere* are the Object of *ait*; in the second the words *scribatne Caesar* are the Subject of interest.

§ 92. Q. What is a Compound Sentence?

A. A sentence consisting of a number of clauses joined together in such a manner that one clause is Principal and the others Subordinate.

§ 93. Q. Distinguish between Principal and Subordinate clauses.

A. The Principal clause contains the main Statement, Question, or Command: Subordinate clauses are added in order to explain some word, usually either a Noun or Verb, in the Principal sentence.

§ 94. Q. How are Subordinate clauses introduced?

A. Subordinate clauses are introduced either by the Relative, *qui, quae, quod, as, vir quem video, bonus est, The man whom I see is good,* or by a Subordinative Conjunction, *as, haec fecit, ut laudaretur, He did this that he might be praised.*

On the Three Concords or Rules of Agreement.

§ 95. Q. Name the Three Concords or Rules of Agreement.

A. (a) The Finite Verb agrees with its Nominative in Number and Person, *as, Rex audit, The king hears, or is hearing; Reges audiunt, The kings hear, or are hearing.*

Note. We could not in Latin say *rex audiunt* or *reges audit*, any more than we could say in English, *the king are hearing, or the kings is hearing.*

(b) The Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, *as,*

Bonae matres bonos pueros amant, Good mothers love good boys.

Opus perfectum est, The work is accomplished.

Illud opus perfectum est, That work is accomplished.

Note. Participles and Adjectival Pronouns are here considered as Adjectives.

- (c) The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause, as,
Arbor, *quae* in horto crescit, *alta est*, *The tree which grows in the garden is high.*
Arbor, *quam* video, *alta est*, *The tree which I see is high.*

On Copulative Verbs.

§ 96. Q. What are Copulative Verbs?

A. The Verb *sum*, and Passive Verbs of *thinking, calling, or making*, as, *vocor, I am called, fio, I am made*, etc.

§ 97. Q. What is the Case-Construction after Copulative Verbs?

A. They take the same Case after them as they have before them, as, *dies fit nox, day becomes night; sensimus diem fieri noctem, we perceived that day was becoming night.*

On Apposition.

§ 98. Q. What is meant by Apposition?

A. One Substantive added to another to explain some part of its meaning is said to be in Apposition to it, as, *Cassandra vates, Cassandra the prophetess.*

§ 99. Q. Name the three kinds of Apposition.

A. (a) The first kind is where the second Substantive comes close after the first and explains some part of its meaning, as,

Marius **consul** triumphavit, *Marius the consul triumphed;*

(b) The second is where the second Substantive is separated from the first by a Copulative Verb, as,

Marius erat **consul**, *Marius was consul.*

Marius **consul** creatus est, *Marius was made consul.*

- (c) The third is where both Substantives are in the Accusative after an Active Verb of *thinking, calling, or making*, as,

Marium **consulem** creaverunt, *They made Marius consul.*

Note. Apposition of the second and third kind is also explained by Grammarians as forming what is called the *Complement* of the Verb.

§ 100. Q. What is the rule for the Case of a Noun in Apposition?

A. It must be in the same Case as the Noun to which it refers.

Rules of Time, Place, and Measure.

§ 101. Q. Give the rules for expressing *Duration* of Time [or time *how-long*], and a *Point* of Time [or time *when*].

A. Duration of Time is put in the Accusative, as, multos annos vixit, *he lived many years*; a Point of Time in the Ablative, as, primā luce surgit, *he rises at dawn* (lit. *at first light*).

§ 102. Q. How is *to* a place expressed?

A. By *ad* or *in* with Accusative, unless the place be a town or small island,¹ when the Preposition is omitted, as,

Ad portam eo, *I go to the gate.* But,

Romam eo, *I go to Rome.*

§ 103. Q. How is *from* a place expressed?

A. By *ab* or *ex* with Ablative, unless the place be a town or small island,² when the Preposition is omitted, as,

¹ Except also domum, *home*, rus, *the country*, and foras, *out of doors*; as domum ibo, *I will go home*; rus ibo, *I will go into the country*; foras ibo, *I will go out of doors*.

² Or domo, *from home*; rure, *from the country*; humo, *from the ground*.

Ex castris profectus est, *He set out from the camp.* But,
Romā profectus est, *He set out from Rome.*

§ 104. Q. How is *at* a place expressed?

A. By *ad* with Accusative, or *in* with Ablative, unless the place be a town or small island, when the Locative Case must be used, as,

Ad fluvium constitit, He halted at the river. But,
Cortonae mansit, He remained at Cortona.

§ 105. Q. What is the Locative Case?

A. An old Case specially used to denote '*at a place.*' It ends like the Ablative, except in the Singular Number of the First and Second Declensions, where it ends like the Genitive, as,

Romae, Sami, Athenis, Carthagine, Gadibus vixit, He has lived at Rome, Samos, Athens, Carthage, and Cadiz.

§ 106. Q. What Nouns have a Locative Case in use?

A. Names of towns and small islands; the Case also survives in the words *domi, at home, foris, out of doors, humi, on the ground, ruri, in the country, vesperi, in the evening, belli, at the war, and militiae, on military service.*

§ 107. Q. How is Measure of Space expressed?

A. Usually by the Accusative, as,

Fossa ducentos pedes longa, A trench 200 feet long.

Duo millia passuum progreditur, He advances two miles.

But sometimes by the Ablative, as,

Hiberna duobus millibus passuum aberant, The winter-quarters were two miles distant.

Note. Measures in the Genitive, as, *fossa ducentorum pedum, a trench 200 feet long*, may be classed as Genitives of Quality. For Ablatives of Measure, as *multo major*, etc., see § 121 (g).

On the Accusative Case.

§ 108. *Q.* Define the Accusative Case.

A. The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object, and of Extension over Space. It also stands as Subject of the Infinitive Mood.

§ 109. *Q.* What is the Accusative of the Direct Object?

A. The Accusative which follows Transitive Verbs, as,
Video taurum, I see a bull.

§ 110. *Q.* What other uses of the Accusative are there?

A. (a) The Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Meaning, which follows Intransitive Verbs, as,
Duram servit servitutem, He serves a hard servitude.

(b) The Accusative of Limitation, which is generally an Adjective or Pronoun in the Neuter Gender, and is added chiefly to Intransitive Verbs, as,

Quid refert, What does it matter?

Serā comans narcissus, The late-blooming narcissus.

(c) The Accusative of Respect, which follows certain Active Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, and is translated by the sign *with respect to* or *as to*, as,
Latus humeros, Broad as to his shoulders.

(d) (e) (f) The Accusatives of Duration of Time, Motion to, and Measure, which have already been noticed (§§ 101, 102, 107).

(g) The Accusative of Exclamation, used with or without an Interjection, as,

Me miserum! Unhappy me! Proh deorum atque hominum fidem! Alas for the faith of Gods and men!

(h) The Accusative after a Preposition.

§ 111. Q. What Prepositions govern the Accusative?

A. Ante, apud, ad, adversus,
 Circum, circa, citra, cis,
 Contra, erga, extra, infra,
 Inter, intra, juxta, ob,
 Penes, pone, post, and praeter,
 Prope, propter, per, secundum,
 Supra, versus, ultra, trans,
 And unto these, if *motion* be intended,
 Let in, sub, super, subter, be appended.

Note. For the meaning of these Prepositions see §§ 318-347.

§ 112. Q. Explain the Accusative and Infinitive construction.

A. The Accusative and Infinitive is used as Subject of Impersonal Verbs, and as Object of Verbs of *declaring, perceiving, knowing, thinking, or believing*. The rule for translation is;—begin with the word *that*, and then construe the Accusative as a Nominative, and the Infinitive as a Finite Verb of the same Tense, as,

Caesarem amare constat, *It is well known that Caesar loves.* (Caesarem amare, *Subject*; constat, *Verb.*)

Caesarem amavisse scimus, *We know that Caesar has loved.* (Scimus, *Verb*; Caesarem amavisse, *Object.*)

§ 113. Q. Give a rule for translating the Conjunction *that* into Latin.

When *that* means *the fact that* it is usually translated by Accusative and Infinitive, as,

Nuntiat Caesarem rediisse, *He announces (the fact) that Caesar has returned.*

But when *that* means *in order that* or *so that* it is translated by *ut* with Subjunctive, as,

Serunt, *ut metant*, *They sow that they may reap.*

Tam ignavus est *ut nihil discat*, *He is so lazy that he learns nothing.*

§ 114. Q. What Verbs take two Accusatives?

A. Verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, and *celo*, *to conceal*, as,

Nos sententiam rogavit, *He asked us our opinion.*

Nos hanc rem celavit, *He concealed this matter from us.*

Note. The Accusative of the *thing asked* or *taught* remains even when the Verb is in the Passive Voice, as, Rogatur sententiam, *He is asked his opinion*; Docta est litteras, *She has been taught her letters.*

On the Dative Case.

§ 115. Q. Define the Dative Case.

A. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object.

Note. The Indirect Object in the person (or thing) *affected* but *not directly acted on* by any action or quality.

§ 116. Q. What words can take a Dative of the Indirect Object?

A. (a) Transitive Verbs, which already have a direct Object, as, Fabio consilium dedi, *I gave advice to Fabius.*

(b) Intransitive and Passive Verbs, as, Plaudunt histrioni, *They applaud the actor*¹, Fabio consilium datur, *advice is given to Fabius.* (c) Adjectives, as, Mihi amicus est, *He is friendly to me.*

§ 117. Q. What other uses of the Dative are there?

A. (a) The Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi), used generally of

¹ Lit. 'clap their hands for the actor.' Many Verbs which seem from their English translation to be Transitive are really Intransitive in Latin and so require a Dative, e.g. nocco is 'I am hurtful' rather than 'I hurt,' &c.

persons after Verbs and Adjectives, and translated by the Preposition *for*, as,

Praedia aliis coluit, non sibi, *He cultivated farms for others, not for himself.*

(b) The Ethic Dative; a Dative of the Personal Pronouns, used in order to call particular attention to the person indicated. It admits of many renderings in English according to the sense of the passage, as,
 Quid mihi Celsus agit, *Pray tell me, what is Celsus doing?*
 Pulset mihi lictorem, *Let me see him strike a lictor.*
 Quid tibi vis, *What do you want?*

(c) The Dative of the Possessor, often used where we should have expected a Genitive, as,
 Caesari ad pedes se projecit, *He threw himself at Caesar's feet.*

(d) The Dative of Separation, or Difference, translated by *from*, and often used where we should have expected an Ablative (see § 250), as,
 Adimam tibi compedes, *I will take your fetters from you.*
 Dissidens plebi, *Differing from the common people.*

(e) The Dative of the Agent, which is used with the Gerundive, with Passive Verbs and Participles (in poetry), and with Verbal Adjectives in *-bilis*, as,
 Hoc tibi non faciendum est, *This must not be done by you.*
 Non intellegor ulli, *I am understood by no one.*
 Bella matribus detestata, *Wars abhorred by mothers.*
 Nulli flebilior quam tibi, *By none more lamented than by thee.*

(f) The Dative of Purpose, as,
 Decemviri legibus scribendis creati, *Decemvirs created for the purpose of writing the laws.*

(g) The Dative of the Predicate, which in English we express by a Nominative, as,

Ea res impedimento erat, *That matter was a hindrance.*

§ 118. Q. What Verbs govern the Dative?

A. (a) All the compounds of *sum* except *possum*.

(b) All Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis*, and many compounded with the following Prepositions,

Ad, *ab*, *ante*, *ex*, and *de*,

Ob, *sub*, *super*, *post*, and *prae*.

(c) 1. A dative put with *shew*, and *give*,

2. *Tell*, *envy*, *spare*, *permit*, *believe*,

3. *Persuade*, *command*, *obey*; to these

4. Add *threaten*, *succour*, *pardon*, *please*,

5. With *vacāre*, *displacere*,

6. *Servire*, *nubere*, *studere*,

7. *Heal*, *favour*, *hurt*, *resist*, and *indulgere*¹.

Note 1. All the above take a Dative of the *person* (also occasionally of the *thing*); some of them, e.g. *dico*, *do*, *invideo*, *permitto*, *persuadeo*, *ignosco*, with some others not mentioned, as, *excuso*, *I plead in excuse*, *defendo*, *I ward off*, *grātūlor*, *I congratulate*, etc., take a Dative of the *person* and an Accusative of the *thing*, as, *do tibi librum*, *I give you a book*, *minor tibi mortem*, *I threaten death to you*, *threaten you with death*.

Note 2. *Jubeo*, *sino*, *laedo*, *delecto*, *sano*² take an Accusative: *tempōre* and *modōre* take an Accusative when they mean *to govern*, but a Dative when they mean *to restrain* or *refrain from*.

§ 119. Q. What is the Passive use of Verbs which in the Active Voice govern a Dative only?

A. They are only used *impersonally* in the Passive. Thus, *I persuade* is '*persuadeo*,' but *I am persuaded* is not '*persuadeor*,' but '*persuadetur mihi*'; literally, *it is persuaded to me*.

¹ Line 1. *Ostendo*, *monstro*, etc.; *do*. 2. *Dico*, etc.; *invideo*; *parco*; *permitto*, *concedo*, *licet*, etc.; *credo*. 3. *Persuadeo*; *impero*, *mando*, etc.; *pareo* or *obedio*. 4. *Minor*; *succurro*, *auxilior*, *subvenio*, etc.; *ignosco* or *condono*; *placeo* or *libet*. 5. *Have leisure for*; *displease*. 6. *Be a slave to*; *be married to*; *pay attention to*. 7. *Medeor*; *faveo*; *noceo*; *resisto* or *repugno*; *indulge*.

² *Command*, *permit*, *hurt*, *please*, *heal*.

On the Ablative Case.

§ 120. Q. Define the Ablative Case.

A. The Ablative is the Case which modifies the meaning of Verbs or Nouns, like an Adverb, especially as regards Place *whence*, Place *where*, and Instrument *with which*. Examples are,

a. Place *whence*, as, *Athenis redit, He returns from Athens* (§ 103).

b. Place *where*, as, *terrā marique, By land and sea*.

Note 1. This Ablative is often hardly distinguishable from the Locative, on account of the similarity of the endings.

Note 2. Here, perhaps, should be noticed the forms *magni*, at a great price, *parvi*, tanti, quanti, etc., which have lately been classed by etymologists as Locatives, though the old grammarians classed them as Genitives of Value.

c. Instrument *with which*, as, *gladio pugnare, to fight with a sword*.

§ 121. Q. What other uses of the Ablative are there?

A. (a) Separation, as, *oppugnatione desistunt, They desist from the attack*.

(b) Origin, as, *clarissimo patre natus, Born of a most noble father*.

(c) Comparison (used after Comparative Adjectives, and translated by *than*), as, *Caesar major erat Crasso, Caesar was greater than Crassus*.

(d) Price (or amount *at which*), as, *hortum tribus talentis ēmit, He bought a garden for three talents*.

(e) Time *when*, as, *tertio anno, in the third year*. This Ablative has been already noticed in § 101.

(f) Respect, as, *aetate provectus, Advanced in age*.

(g) Measure, as, *tribus millibus passuum abest, He is three miles distant*. Especially frequent after Comparative Adjectives, as, *multo major, much greater*.

- (h) Matter *with which*, as, *parvo contentus, contented with a little.*
- (j) Quality (translated by *of*, and never found except with Adjective in agreement), as, *vir summā sapientiā, a man of the utmost wisdom.*
- (k) Manner *how* (usually with Adjective in agreement), as, *aut vi aut fraude fit injuria, Injury is caused either by violence or fraud: suā sponte hoc fecit, He did this of his own accord.*
- (l) Cause, as, *senectute mortuus est, He died of old age.*
- (m) Agent *by whom*, after Passive Verbs (always used of a *living thing*, and always requiring the Preposition **a** or **ab**), as, *Caesar a Bruto interfectus est, Caesar was slain by Brutus.*

Note. Of the above uses, *a, b, c* may be referred more or less closely to *Place whence, d, e, f, g* to *Place where*, and *h, j, k, l, m* to *Instrument*.

(n) Ablative after a Preposition.

§ 122. Q. What Prepositions govern the Ablative?

A. **A** (**ab**), **absque**, **coram**, **de**,
palam, **clam**, **cum**, **ex** or **e**,
sine, **tenus**, **pro**, and **prae**.
 And unto these, if *rest at* be intended,
 Let **in**, **sub**, **super**, **subter** be appended.

Note. For the meaning of these Prepositions see §§ 348-363.

§ 123. Q. What is the Ablative Absolute?

A. A construction formed of a Noun and Participle in agreement in the Ablative Case. No Preposition is needed in the translation. Thus,

Bello orto, Caesar profectus est, War having arisen, Caesar set out.

Note. Two Nouns in the Ablative Case often constitute an Ablative Absolute, the present Participle of the Verb *sum* (which is wanting in Latin), being understood, as, *te duce, you being leader, Caesare invito, Caesar being unwilling.*

§ 124. Q. What Verbs govern the Ablative?

A. Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, potior, dignor, supersedeo¹, and Verbs of *wanting, being full, enriching, or depriving*.

Note. Impleo, compleo, egeo, indigeo² are also found with Genitive.

§ 125. Q. What Adjectives govern the Ablative?

A. Dignus, indignus, fretus, extorris, liber³, and Adjectives which signify *wanting, being full, enriching, or depriving*.

§ 126. Q. What Substantives govern the Ablative?

A. Opus and usus⁴.

On the Genitive Case.

§ 127. Q. Define the Genitive Case.

A. The Genitive is the Case which qualifies Nouns, like an Adjective. It is also used as the Direct Object of Nouns and Adjectives, and as the Indirect Object of certain Verbs.

§ 128. Q. Distinguish between the Subjective and Objective Genitive.

A. The Subjective Genitive is a Genitive dependent on a Substantive, and regarded as the Subject from whence that Substantive proceeds, as, Amor Dei, *the love of God*, i.e. the love which *God* has for us (where God is the Subject who loves).

The Objective Genitive is a Genitive dependent on

¹ Perform, enjoy, use, eat, get possession of, deem worthy, desist from. [Potior also takes a Genitive].

² Fill, fill, be in want, be in want.

³ Worthy, unworthy, relying on, banished, free. [Dignus and indignus sometimes, though rarely, take a genitive, as, magnorum indignus avorum, *unworthy of my great ancestors*.]

⁴ Need, use.

a Substantive, and regarded as the Object towards which that Substantive, is directed, as, *Amor Dei*, *love of God*, i.e. the love which *we* have *for God* (where God is the Object of our love).

§ 129. Q. Classify the uses of the Genitive.

A. (a) Genitive of the Possessor or Author, as, *horti Caesaris*, *the gardens of Caesar*; *pater Bruti*, *the father of Brutus*.

(b) Partition (when the Genitive of a Noun signifying a *whole* is dependent on a Noun signifying a *part of that whole*), as, *magna pars militum*, *a great part of the soldiers*; *fortissimus Graecorum*, *the bravest of the Greeks*.

(c) Definition (showing of what a thing consists), as, *honor consulatus*, *the honour of the consulship*; *cadus vini*, *a cask of wine*; *vox voluptatis*, *the word 'pleasure.'*

(d) Quality (always found with Adjective in agreement), as, *vir summae sapientiae*, *a man of the utmost wisdom*.

Note 1. Quality is also expressed by the Ablative. See § 121 (k).

Note 2. The above are all to be classed as Subjective Genitives.

(e) Object of Substantives, as, *timor hostium*, *fear of the enemy*.

(f) Object of Adjectives, as, *avidus laudis*, *eager for praise*.

(g) Indirect Object of Verbs, as, *me majestatis accusat*, *he accuses me of treason*; *datae fidei reminiscitur*, *he remembers his promise given*.

(h) Respect or Cause (usually in imitation of Greek constructions), as, *integer aevi*, *unimpaired in age*;

notus in fratres animi paterni, *well known for his paternal affection towards his brothers.*

Note 3. For the Genitive of Value see § 120, b, Note 2.

§ 130. Sometimes the Substantive on which a Genitive is dependent is omitted; of this there are two cases, (a) of place, as, *ventum erat ad Vestae, we had come to Vesta's*, i.e. Vesta's temple; just as we say in English 'to go to St. Paul's,' i.e. St. Paul's Cathedral; (b) when the governing Substantive signifies *nature, duty, part, characteristic, or business*, as, *pastoris est tondere oves, it is the duty of a shepherd to shear his sheep.* In both these cases the Genitive is known as *Elliptic*.

§ 131. Q. What Verbs govern a Genitive?

A. (1) *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor, misereor, miseresco, potior, interest, and rēfert*; also certain Verbs signifying *want*, as, *egeo, indigeo*.¹

Note. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, and recordor* also take an Accusative; and *potior* an Ablative.

(2) Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, acquitting, admonishing, and reminding*, take an Accusative of the Person and a Genitive of the Thing, as,

Furti me accusat, He accuses me of theft.

The Impersonal Verbs.

§ 132. Q. What is the construction after the Impersonal Verbs?

A. The Unipersonals take an Accusative of the *Person*, except *licet, libet, and liquet*, which take a Dative; and they may all take an Infinitive Mood, as,

Abire me oportet, I ought to go away.

Abire mihi licet, I am permitted to go away.

Note 1. *Licet* and others sometimes take a Subjunctive with or without *ut*, as, *licet mihi abeam, or ut abeam, I am permitted to go away.*

Note 2. *Miseret, piget, paenitet, pudet, and taedet* may also take a Genitive of the *person or thing* that causes the feeling, as, *miseret me tui, I pity you, taedet me vitae, I am weary of life.*

¹ Remember, forget, remember, remember, pity, pity, get possession of, it makes a difference, it concerns, be in want, be in want.

Other Verbs used Impersonally take a Dative of the Person, often with an Infinitive, or *ut* Clause, as,
Expēdit mihi abire, or, ut abeam, It is expedient for me to go away.

But *decet, dedecet, juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit,*¹ take an Accusative, as,

Te pugnare juvat, You delight in fighting.

§ 133. *Q.* What is the construction after *interest* and *refert*?²

A. They take a Genitive of the Person, often with an Infinitive or *ut* Clause. But instead of *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used, as,

Nec Caesaris nec nostrā interest ut venias, It is neither of importance to Caesar nor to us that you should come.

On the Infinitive Mood.

§ 134. *Q.* What is the Infinitive Mood?

A. It is, properly speaking, a Verb-Noun, and may be Nominative, as,

Dormire est jucundum, to sleep is pleasant, or sleeping is pleasant,

or Accusative, as,

Cupio dormire, I wish to sleep.

§ 135. *Q.* What are the Gerunds?

A. They are Cases of the Infinitive, the Gerund in *-dum* being Accusative (after a Preposition), the Gerund in *-di* Genitive, and the Gerund in *-do* Dative or Ablative.

¹ *It becomes or beseems, misbecomes, delights, delights, escapes one's notice, escapes one's notice.*

² *It is of importance to or makes a difference to, it concerns or is of importance to.*

§ 136. Q. What are the Supines?

A. These are also Cases of the Infinitive, the Supine in **-um** being Accusative (only used after Verbs of *motion*, as, *eo lusum, I go to play*), and the Supine in **-u** Ablative (of Respect), after Adjectives, as, *horrendum dictu, horrible to be told*, lit. horrible in the telling.

§ 137. Q. How is the Future Infinitive Passive formed?

A. By the Supine in **-um** and *iri* the Present Infinitive Passive of *eo, I go*, used *Impersonally*, as, *credo occisum iri Caesarem, I believe that Caesar will be killed*; literally, *credo I believe, iri that there is a going, occisum to kill, Caesarem Caesar*.

On the Gerund and Gerundive.

§ 138. Q. Can the Gerunds take an Object in the Accusative Case?

A. Sometimes¹, as, *Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, I am elated with the desire of seeing your fathers*. But usually the Noun is put into the Case of the Gerund, and instead of the Gerund the Gerundive is used, agreeing in Gender, Number, and Case with the Noun.

§ 139. Q. Give an example.

A. Instead of saying, *amor exercendi virtutem, the love of practising virtue*, we usually say, *amor exercendae virtutis*.

¹ Especially when a Pronoun or Adjective is the Object, as, *studio illud videndi, with a desire of seeing that thing*; *studio multa videndi, with desire of seeing many things*. This is to prevent ambiguity, because *studio illius videndi* might mean *with a desire of seeing that man or that thing*; *studio multorum videndorum*, might mean *with a desire of seeing many men, or many things*.

§ 140. Q. How is the word *must* translated into Latin?

A. In the Passive Voice by the Gerundive; in the Active by the forms *amandum est*, *we must love*, *monendum est*, *we must advise*, etc., which are probably the neuters of the Gerundive.

§ 141. Q. Can *amandum est* take an Accusative of the Object after it, as, *Amandum est Deum*, *We must love God*?

A. No; we must say, *Amandus est Deus*, *God must be loved*. But after Verbs which only govern the Dative, a Dative of the Object is used, as, *Parcendum est hostibus*, *We must spare our enemies*.

Note. *Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, and *potior*, which govern an Ablative, have both Gerund and Gerundive; hence we may say, *utendum est aetate*, *we must make use of our age*, or, *utenda est aetas*, (the latter form very rare).

§ 142. Q. In what case is the Agent, or *living person* by whom a thing is done, put after the Gerundive?

A. In the Dative, as, *Canendum est poetae*, *The poet must sing* [literally, 'it is to be sung by the poet';] unless the Verb be one of those which only govern a Dative, when a *or ab* with Ablative must be used, as, *Credendum est a poetâ*, *The poet must believe*.

Note. This is to prevent ambiguity; *nobis credendum est poetae* might mean either *the poet must believe us* or *we must believe the poet*.

Rules for Qui, Quum, Ut, Dum, and the Sequence of Tenses.

§ 143. Q. What is the rule for the Mood of the Verb after *qui*?

A. *Qui*, meaning *who* or *which*, takes an Indicative, as, *qui peccat miser est*, *He who sins is miserable*. But if there is implied in it *since*, *in order that*, or *such that*, it takes a Subjunctive, as,

Stultus es qui huic credas, *You are foolish for believing this man.*

Mittit equites qui agros vastent, *He sends cavalry to lay waste the fields.*

Non est is qui timeat, *He is not the man to be afraid.*

Note. Qui is also found with Subjunctive in the sense of *although*.

§ 144. Q. What is the Rule for *quum* (or *eum*)?

A. *Quum*, meaning *since* or *although*, always takes a Subjunctive, as, *quae quum ita sint*, *Since these things are so*; *quum*, meaning *when*, takes a Subjunctive if the sense requires an Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense; otherwise it takes an Indicative, as,

Quum Athenis essem, *When I was at Athens.*

Quum Athenas pervenisset, *When he had arrived at Athens.*

Vix haec locutus erat quum clamor exortus est, *Scarcely had he said these things when a shout arose.*

§ 145. Q. What is the rule for *ut*?

A. *Ut*, meaning *as*, *when*, or *how*, takes an Indicative, as, *ut vales*, *How are you?* *ut*, meaning *in order that*, or *so that*, takes a Subjunctive, as,

Edimus ut vivamus, *We eat that we may live.*

Tam potens est Deus ut omnia regat, *God is so powerful that he rules all things.*

Note. The Rules given in the three foregoing sections must be understood to apply only to *Oratio Recta*, so far as the use of the Indicative is concerned. When the learner has mastered the Note on the Subjunctive given in §§197-203, he will understand that whenever a Sentence is Oblique the use of an Indicative is inadmissible.

§ 146. Q. How are *in order that* . . . *not* and *so that* . . . *not* translated?

A. *In order that* . . . *not* by *nē*; *so that* . . . *not* by *ut non*.

§ 147. Q. What is the rule for *dum*?

A. (a) *Dum*, meaning *while*, takes an Indicative, and when used of past events is usually found with a Historic Present, as,

Dum Romani consultant, Saguntum oppugnabatur,
While the Romans were consulting, Saguntum was besieged.

(b) *Dum*, meaning *until*, takes a Subjunctive or Indicative, according as the idea of expectation or of mere time prevails, as,

Maneamus dum vesperscat, Let us wait until evening comes on.

Tutus erat, dum vespervit, He was safe till evening came on.

(c) *Dum* (or *dummodo*), meaning *provided that*, always takes a Subjunctive, as,

Oderint dum metuant, Let them hate provided they fear.

Note. Rules for *Quod* and *Si* are given in §§ 297 and 394 respectively.

§ 148. Q. What is the rule for the Sequence of Tenses? ¹

A. Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic. Examples are:—

Quaero, quaesivi, quaeram, quid scribat, quid scripserit, quid scripturus sit, quid scripturus fuerit.

I ask or am asking, I have asked, I shall ask, what he writes or is writing, what he wrote or has written, what he will write, what he would have written.

Quaerebam, quaesivi, quaesiveram, quid scriberet, quid scripsisset, quid scriptura esset, quid scriptura fuisset.

I was asking, I asked, I had asked, what she wrote or was writing, what she had written, what she would write, what she would have written.

¹ By Sequence (or Consecution) of Tenses we mean the correspondence regularly observed between the tenses of Dependent or Subordinate Verbs in a Sentence and those of their Principal Verbs.

APPENDIX.

A TABLE OF VERBS, SHEWING THE PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE.

Note.—Some Verbs, as *lăyo*, have forms belonging to more than one Conjugation. These are bracketed and placed in the earliest in order of the Conjugations to which either of the forms can be referred.

* ** Forms enclosed in round brackets, as, (*jutum*) are rarely used.

§ 149. First Conjugation.

	Present.	Infinitive.	Perfect.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-o,	-are,	-avi,	-atum.
as,	amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum.

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having -ui in Perfect, -*itum* or -*tum* in Supine.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1.	crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepŭi,	crepĭtum,	<i>creak.</i>
2.	cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubŭi,	cubĭtum,	<i>lie down.</i>
3.	dŏmo,	domāre,	domŭi,	domĭtum,	<i>tame.</i>
4.	ĕnĕco,	enecāre,	enecui,	enectum,	<i>kill</i> ¹ .
5.	explico,	explicāre,	{ explicŭi, explicāvi,	{ explicĭtum, explicātum,	} <i>unfold</i> ² .
6.	frico,	fricāre,	fricŭi,	frictum,		rub.
7.	mico,	micāre,	micŭi,	. . .	<i>glitter</i> ³
8.	sĕco,	secāre,	secŭi,	sectum,	<i>cut.</i>
9.	sŭno,	sonāre,	sonŭi,	sonĭtum,	<i>sound.</i>
10.	tŏno,	tonāre,	tonŭi,	tonĭtum,	<i>thunder.</i>
11.	vĕto,	vetāre,	vetŭi,	vetĭtum,	<i>forbid.</i>

¹ The simple form *neco*, *to kill*, is regular.

² So nearly all compounds of *plico*, *to fold*, which has no Perfect or Supine. But *duplico*, *double*, *multiplico*, *multiply*, *supplico*, *supplicate*, are regular, not being compounds of *plico*.

³ Compounds have -*atum* in Supine. *Dimico*, *contend*, has Perf. -*avi* or -*ui*.

(b) Those having -vi in Perfect, -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	(jūtum),	<i>help.</i>
2. lāvo,	{ lavāre, lavēre,	lāvi, (lavavi),	{ lautum, lōtum, lavātum,	<i>wash.</i>
3. pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	{ potātum, pōtum,	<i>drink.</i>

(c) Those having reduplicated¹ Perfect, -tum in Supine.

1. do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	<i>give.</i>
2. sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	<i>stand</i> ² .

§ 150. Second Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	-ēo,	-ēre,	-ūi,	-itum.
as,	monēo,	monēre,	monūi.	monitum.

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having regular Perf. in -ui, but -tum or -sum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	<i>reckon, think.</i>
2. doceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>teach.</i>
3. misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum,	<i>mix.</i>
4. rētinēo,	retinēre,	retinui,	rētentum,	<i>retain</i> ³ .
5. torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>parch.</i>

(b) Those having -vi (-ui) in Perf., -tum or -itum in Supine.

1. aboleo,	abolēre,	{ abolevi, abolui,	abolitum,	<i>abolish.</i>
2. { adoleo, adolesco,	adolēre, adolecere,	{ adolevi, adolui,	adultum,	{ enlarge. grow ⁴ .

¹ That is, having the first consonant of the Present, together with a vowel, prefixed to the Perfect Tense, as do, *de-di*. In the Perfects of Verbs compounded with do and sto the initial consonants of the Verb, not of the Preposition, appear as the reduplication of the Perfect, *e.g.* consto, *con-si-ti*.

² The compounds make -stīti in Perf., as, *praesto, praestiti*, and seldom have a Supine.

³ So all compounds of 'teneo,' *to hold*, which has no Supine.

⁴ *Adoleo* (usually in Perf. *adolui*), *to enlarge*, hence as sacrificial term (1) *to honour* by sacrifice, (2) *to burn* sacrifice. *Adolesco* (usually in Perf. *adolēvi*), *to grow* (intrans.).

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
3. conīveo,	conivēre,	{conīvi, conixi,}	. . .	<i>wink.</i>
4. dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	<i>destroy.</i>
5. {ferveo, fervo,	fervēre, fervēre,	{ferbui, fervi,}	. . .	<i>boil.</i>
6. flēo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	<i>weep.</i>
7. impleo,	implēre,	implēvi,	implētum,	<i>fill¹.</i>
8. neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	<i>spin.</i>
9. pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	. . .	<i>be afraid.</i>

(c) Those having -si in Perf., -sum or -tum in Supine.

1. absorbeo,	absorbēre,	{absorpsi, absorbui,}	(absorptum),	<i>swallow up².</i>
2. algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	. . .	<i>be cold.</i>
3. ardeo,	ardēre,	arsī,	arsum,	<i>be on fire.</i>
4. augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>make bigger.</i>
5. {fulgeo, fulgo,	{fulgēre, fulgēre,}	fulsi,	. . .	<i>glitter.</i>
6. frīgeo,	frigēre,	(frixi),	. . .	<i>be cold.</i>
7. haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>stick.</i>
8. indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	(indultum),	<i>indulge.</i>
9. jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>command.</i>
10. māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>remain, await.</i>
11. lugeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	(luctum),	<i>mourn.</i>
12. mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>soothe.</i>
13. mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	{(mulsum), mulctum,}	<i>milk.</i>
14. rīdeo,	ridēre,	risi,	risum,	<i>laugh.</i>
15. suadeo,	suadēre,	suasi,	suasum,	<i>advise.</i>
16. torquēo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>twist.</i>
17. {tergeo, tergo,	{tergēre, tergēre,}	tersi,	tersum,	<i>wipe.</i>
18. turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi,	. . .	<i>swell.</i>
19. urgeo,	urgēre,	ursi,	. . .	<i>urge.</i>

(d) Those having -i in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	<i>be ware.</i>
2. fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	<i>favour.</i>
3. fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	<i>cherish.</i>
4. mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	motum,	<i>move.</i>
5. vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	<i>vow.</i>

¹ So all compounds of 'pleo,' to fill, which is never found in an unpounded form.

² So all compounds of sorbeo, sorbēre, sorbui, no Sup., to swallow.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
6. prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	dine.
7. respondeo,	respondēre,	respondi,	responsum,	answer ¹ .
8. sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	sit ² .
9. vīdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	visum,	see.

(e) Those having reduplicated Perf., -sum in Supine.

1. mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	bite.
2. pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	be suspended.
3. spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	promise.
4. tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	shear.

(f) Semi-deponent Verbs.

1. audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	dare.
2. gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus sum,	rejoice.
3. solēo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	be accustomed.

(g) The following have regular Perfect but seldom or never a Supine:—arceo, *ward off*; caleo, *be warm* (calitum); egeo, *be in want*; floreo, *flourish*; horreo, *shudder*; lateo, *lie hid*; madeo, *be wet*; niteo, *shine*; oleo, *smell*; pateo, *lie open*; rigeo, *be stiff*; rubeo, *be red*; sileo, *be silent*; studeo, *pay attention to*; stupeo, *be amazed*; tepeo, *be warm*; timeo, *fear*; tumeo, *swell*; vigeo, *flourish*; vireo, *be green*.

§ 151. Third Conjugation.

No regular form. Infinitive ends in -ēre. The principal varieties of Conjugation are the following:—

(a) Those having -si in Perf., -tum in Supine. [Note. Perfects in -xi are considered as ending in -si, since x is only a double letter standing for cs, gs, ks, or qs.]

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. allīcō,	allīcēre,	allexi,	allectum,	entice ³ .
2. aspīcō,	aspīcēre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	behold ⁴ .
3. carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	pluck.
4. cingo,	cingēre,	cinxī,	cinctum,	surround.
5. cōmo,	comēre,	compsi,	comptum,	adorn.

¹ So all compounds of spondeo, *to promise*. Note that compounds of reduplicated Verbs rarely retain the reduplication.

² The compounds, except circumsedeo and supersedeo, make -sideo, -sēdi, -sessum, as obsideo, *to besiege*.

³ So all compounds [except 'elicio'] of the unused Verb lacio, *to entice*.

⁴ So all compounds of the unused Verb specio, *to see*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
6. contemno,	contemnere,	contempsi,	contemptum,	<i>despise</i> ¹ .
7. cōquo,	coquere,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>cook</i> .
8. dēmo,	demere,	demptsi,	demptum,	<i>take away</i> .
9. dīco,	dicere,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>say, tell</i> .
10. dūco,	ducere,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>lead</i> .
11. emungo,	emungere,	emunxi,	emunctum,	<i>blow the nose</i> .
12. extinguo,	extinguere,	extinxi,	extinctum,	<i>extinguish</i> ² .
13. fingo,	ingere,	finxi,	fictum,	<i>invent</i> .
14. frīgo,	frigere,	(frixī),	frictum,	<i>roast</i> .
15. gēro,	gerere,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>carry on</i> .
16. inflīgo,	infligere,	influxi,	inflictum,	<i>inflict</i> ³ .
17. jūngo,	jungere,	junxi,	junctum,	<i>join</i> .
18. (ninguo),	ninguere,	(ninxi),	. . .	<i>snow</i> ⁴ .
19. nūbo,	nubere,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>be married</i> ⁵ .
20. pingo,	pingere,	pinxi,	pictum,	<i>paint</i> .
21. plango,	plangere,	planxi,	placatum,	<i>beat the breast</i> .
22. prōmo,	promere,	prompsi,	promptum,	<i>draw out</i> .
23. rēgo,	regere,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>rule</i> ⁶ .
24. rēpo,	repere,	repsi,	(reptum),	<i>creep</i> .
25. {scalpo,	scalpere,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	} <i>engrave</i> .
25. {sculpo,	sculpere,	sculpsi,	sculptum,	
26. scrībo,	scribere,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>write</i> .
27. stringo,	stringere,	strinxi,	strictum,	<i>squeeze</i> .
28. strūo,	struere,	struxi,	structum,	<i>build</i> .
29. sūgo,	sugere,	suxi,	suctum,	<i>suck</i> .
30. sūmo,	sumere,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>take</i> .
31. tēgo,	tegere,	texi,	tectum,	<i>cover</i> .
32. tinguo,	tingere,	tinxi,	tinctum,	<i>dye</i> .
33. trāho,	trahere,	traxi,	tractum,	<i>draw</i> .
34. unguo,	unguere,	unxi,	unctum,	<i>anoint</i> .
35. ūro,	urere,	ussi,	ustum,	<i>burn</i> .
36. vēho,	vehere,	vexi,	vectum,	<i>carry</i> .
37. vīvo,	vivere,	vixi,	victum,	<i>live</i> .

¹ The simple form temno, *despise*, is seldom found in Perf. or Supine.

² So all compounds of stinguo, *to quench*, which has no Perfect or Supine.

³ So all compounds of the unused Verb fligo, *to smite*, except profligo, *roul*, which is of the 1st Conjugation.

⁴ Not found except as Impersonal ninguit, *it snows*, ninxit, etc.

⁵ Lit. *put on a bridal veil*, and always, therefore, used of a woman.

⁶ The compounds make -rigo, -rexī, -rectum, as dirigo, *direct*. Pergo, *proceed*, and surgo, *rise*, are for perrigo, surrigo (per-rego, sub-rego), and make pergere, perrexī, perrectum, surgere, surrexī, surrectum.

(b) Those having -si in Perf., -sum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. cēdo,	cedēre,	cessi,	cessum,	go, yield.
2. claudo,	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	shut ¹ .
3. concutīo,	concutēre,	concussi,	concssum,	shake ² .
4. divīdo,	divīdēre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	divide.
5. evādo,	evādēre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	go out ³ .
6. figo,	figēre,	fixi,	fixum,	fix.
7. flecto,	flectēre,	flexi,	flexum,	bend.
8. fluō,	fluēre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	flow.
9. laedo,	laedēre,	laesi,	laesum,	hurt ⁴ .
10. lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	play.
11. mergo,	mergēre,	mersi,	mersum,	plunge.
12. mitto,	mittēre,	misi,	missum,	send.
13. necto,	nectēre,	{ nexi, nexui, }	nexum,	bind.
14. pecto,	pectēre,	pexi,	pexum,	comb.
15. plaudo,	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	clap the hands ⁵ .
16. plecto,	pectēre,	. . .	plexum,	plait.
17. plecto,	pectēre,	. . .	. . .	punish.
18. prēmo,	premēre,	pressi,	pressum,	press ⁶ .
19. rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	scrape.
20. rōdo,	rodēre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	gnaw.
21. spargo,	spargēre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	sprinkle ⁷ .
22. trūdo,	trudēre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	thrust.

(c) Those having a reduplicated Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. cādo,	cādēre,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	fall.
2. caedo,	caedēre,	cēcīdi,	caesum,	cut, kill.
3. cāno,	cānēre,	cēcīni,	cantum,	sing.
4. curro,	currēre,	cūcurri,	cursum,	run.
5. disco,	discēre,	dīdīci,	. . .	learn.
6. fallo,	fallēre,	fēfelli,	falsum,	deceive.
7. pango,	pangēre,	{ pēgi, pēpīgi, }	pactum,	{ fasten, bar- gain.

¹ The compounds make -cludo, as, reclūdo, -ēre, -si, -sum, open.² So all compounds of quatīo, to shake, which has no Perfect.³ So all compounds of vado, to go, which has no Perf. or Sup. in use.⁴ The compounds make -lido, -lisi, -lisum, as illido, dash.⁵ The compounds, except applāudo, make -plodo, -plodēre, -plōsi, -plōsum, as explōdo, hiss off the stage.⁶ The compounds make -prīmo, -pressi, -pressum, as exprimo, express.⁷ The compounds make -spergo, -spersi, -spersum, as aspergo, besprinkle.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
8. parco,	parcere,	pēperci,	parsum,	<i>spare.</i>
9. pārīo,	pārēre,	pēpēri,	{ paritum, partum, }	<i>bring forth.</i>
10. pello,	pellere,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	<i>drive.</i>
11. pendo,	pendere,	pēpendi,	pensum,	<i>weigh.</i>
12. perdo,	perdere,	perdidi,	perditum,	<i>lose, destroy¹.</i>
13. posco,	poscere,	pōposci,	. . .	<i>demand.</i>
14. pungo,	pungere,	pūpūgi,	punctum,	<i>prick².</i>
15. rēsisto,	resistere,	restīti,	restitum,	<i>resist³.</i>
16. sisto,	sistere,	(stēti),	(stātum),	<i>place, stop.</i>
17. tango,	tangere,	tētīgi,	tactum,	<i>touch.</i>
18. tendo,	tendere,	tētendi,	{ tensum, tentum, }	<i>stretch.</i>
19. tollo,	tollere,	. . .	. . .	<i>lift, take away⁴.</i>
20. tundo,	tundere,	(tūtūdi),	{ tūsum, tūsum, }	<i>beat, pound.</i>

(d) Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. attingo,	attingere,	attīgi,	attactum,	<i>touch⁵.</i>
2. āgo ⁶ ,	agere,	ēgi,	actum,	<i>act, drive.</i>
3. bībo,	bibere,	bībi,	bībītum,	<i>drink.</i>
4. cāpio ⁷ ,	cāpere,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>take.</i>
5. contendo,	contendere,	contendi,	contentum,	<i>strive⁸.</i>
6. ēmo ⁹ ,	ēmere,	ēmi,	emptum,	<i>buy.</i>

¹ So most compounds of the unused Verb *do, dēre, to place* [probably a form of *do, dāre*]; as, *addo, add*; *abdo, hide*; *condo, found*; *crēdo, believe*; *dēdo, give up*; *ēdo, give forth*; *prōdo, betray*; *reddo, restore*; *trādo, deliver up*; *vendo, sell*. But *circumdo, surround*; *pessumdo, ruin*; *satisdo, give security*; and *venumdo, offer for sale*, are compounds of *do, dāre, to give*, and belong to the 1st Conjugation.

² The compounds, as *expungo, to expunge*, make -*punxi* in the Perfect.

³ So all compounds of *sisto, to stop* [itself a reduplicated form of 'sto'].

⁴ *Sustuli, sublatum, from suffēro* [sub-fero], are used for the Perfect and Supine of this Verb. The compounds, as *attollo, extollo*, have no Perfect or Supine.

⁵ So all compounds of *tango, to touch*.

⁶ The compounds, except *circumago, perago, satago*, make -*igo, -igere, -ēgi, -actum*, as *exigo, exact*. *Cogo, cōgi, coactum, collect or compel*, is for co-ago. *Dēgo (de-igo), dēgi, to spend time*, has no Supine.

⁷ The compounds, except *antecapio*, make -*cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum*, as *accipio, receive*.

⁸ So all compounds of *tendo, to stretch*. *Extendo, extend, ostendo, shew*, and some others, have -*sum* as well as -*tum* in the Supine.

⁹ Most compounds (except *como, demo, promo, sumo*, § 151, α) make -*imo, -imere, -ēmi, -emptum*, as *adimo, take away*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
7. <i>făcesso</i> ,	<i>facessĕre</i> ,	<i>făcessi</i> ,	<i>facessĭtum</i> ,	<i>execute.</i>
8. <i>făcio</i> ¹ ,	<i>facĕre</i> ,	<i>fĕci</i> ,	<i>factum</i> ,	<i>make, do.</i>
9. <i>frango</i> ² ,	<i>frangĕre</i> ,	<i>frĕgi</i> ,	<i>fractum</i> ,	<i>break.</i>
10. <i>fŭgio</i> ,	<i>fugĕre</i> ,	<i>fŭgi</i> ,	<i>fugĭtum</i> ,	<i>fly.</i>
11. <i>īco</i> ,	<i>īcĕre</i> ,	<i>īci</i> ,	<i>ictum</i> ,	<i>strike.</i>
12. <i>impingo</i> ,	<i>impingĕre</i> ,	<i>impĕgi</i> ,	<i>impactum</i> ,	<i>strike upon</i> ³ .
13. <i>ŭcio</i> ⁴ ,	<i>ŭcĕre</i> ,	<i>ŭci</i> ,	<i>jactum</i> ,	<i>throw.</i>
14. <i>lambō</i> ,	<i>lambĕre</i> ,	<i>lambi</i> ,	.	<i>lick.</i>
15. <i>lēgo</i> ⁵ ,	<i>lēgĕre</i> ,	<i>lēgi</i> ,	<i>lectum</i> ,	<i>choose, read.</i>
16. <i>relinquo</i> ,	<i>relinquĕre</i> ,	<i>reliqui</i> ,	<i>relictum</i> ,	<i>leave</i> ⁶ .
17. <i>rumpo</i> ,	<i>rumpĕre</i> ,	<i>rŭpi</i> ,	<i>ruptum</i> ,	<i>burst through.</i>
18. <i>vinco</i> ,	<i>vincĕre</i> ,	<i>vici</i> .	<i>victum</i> ,	<i>conquer.</i>

(e) Those having -i in Perf., -sum in Supine.

1. <i>accendo</i> ,	<i>accendĕre</i> ,	<i>accendi</i> ,	<i>accensum</i> ,	<i>set on fire</i> ⁷ .
2. <i>contundo</i> ,	<i>contundĕre</i> ,	<i>contŭdi</i> ,	{ <i>contunsum</i> , <i>contŭsum</i> , }	<i>bruise</i> ⁸ .
3. <i>defendo</i> ,	<i>defendĕre</i> ,	<i>defendi</i> ,	<i>defensum</i> ,	<i>defend</i> ⁹ .
4. <i>ĕdo</i> ,	<i>ĕdĕre</i> ,	<i>ĕdi</i> ,	<i>ĕsum</i> ,	<i>eat.</i>
5. <i>excŭdo</i> ,	<i>excudĕre</i> ,	<i>excŭdi</i> ,	<i>excŭsum</i> ,	<i>hammer out</i> ¹⁰ .
6. <i>findo</i> ,	<i>findĕre</i> ,	<i>fīdi</i> ,	<i>fissum</i> ,	<i>cleave.</i>
7. <i>fōdĭo</i> ,	<i>fōdĕre</i> ,	<i>fōdi</i> ,	<i>fossūm</i> ,	<i>dig.</i>
8. <i>fundo</i> ,	<i>fundĕre</i> ,	<i>fŭdi</i> ,	<i>fŭsum</i> ,	<i>pour.</i>
9. <i>mando</i> ,	<i>mandĕre</i> ,	<i>mandi</i> ,	<i>mansum</i> ,	<i>chew.</i>
10. <i>occĭdo</i> ,	<i>occĭdĕre</i> ,	<i>occĭdi</i> ,	<i>occāsūm</i> ,	<i>fall</i> ¹¹ .
11. <i>occĭdo</i> ,	<i>occĭdĕre</i> ,	<i>occĭdi</i> ,	<i>occĭsum</i> ,	<i>kill</i> ¹² .

¹ *Facio*, when compounded with a Preposition, makes -*ficio*, -*ficĕre*, -*fĕci*, -*fectum*, and the Passive is formed regularly in -*or*, as *afficio*, *affect*, Pass. *afficior*. But when compounded with *bene*, *satis*, *male*, or a Verb, the form -*facio* is retained, and the Passive is -*fio*, as *benefacio*, *benefit*, *patefacio*, *lay open*, Pass. *benefio*, *patefio*. [*Conferi* is found in *Virg. Aen. iv. 116.*]

² The compounds make -*fringo*, -*fringere*, -*frĕgi*, -*fractum*, as *effringo*.

³ From *pango*, *to fasten*. Some compounds retain the *a*, as *depango*.

⁴ The compounds make -*jicio*, -*jicĕre*, -*jeci*, -*jectum*, as *conjicio*.

⁵ The compounds are sometimes written -*lego*, as *perlĕgo*, *read through*, sometimes -*lĭgo*, as *delĭgo*, *choose*. Most make -*lēgi*, -*lectum* in Perfect and Supine; but *diligo*, *love*, *intellego*, *understand*, and *neglego*, *neglect*, make -*lexi*, -*lectum*.

⁶ So all compounds of *linquo*, Perf. *liqui*, *to leave*, which has no Supine.

⁷ So all compounds of the unused Verb *cando*, *to set on fire*.

⁸ So most compounds of *tundo*, *to beat or pound*.

⁹ So all compounds of the unused Verb *fendo*, *to strike*.

¹⁰ So all compounds of *cŭdo*, *cŭdi*, *cŭsum*, *to hammer* (rarely used).

¹¹ So all compounds of *cado*, *to fall*; but the Supine is rarely found.

¹² So all compounds of *caedo*, *to cut or kill*.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
12. pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	{ pansum, passum, }	unfold.
13. percello,	percellĕre,	percŭli,	perculsum,	strike down.
14. prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	seize.
15. rĕpello,	rĕpellĕre,	rĕpŭli,	rĕpulsum,	repel ¹ .
16. scando ² ,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	climb.
17. scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	cut.
18. sĭdo,	sĭdĕre,	sĭdi.	. . . .	settle.
19. succurro,	succurrĕre,	succurri,	succursum,	succour ³ .
20. suspendo,	suspendĕre,	suspendi,	suspensum,	suspend ⁴ .
21. vello,	vellĕre,	{ velli, vulsi, }	vulsum,	pluck.
22. verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	sweep.
23. verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	turn.
24. vĭso,	vĭsĕre,	vĭsi,	vĭsum,	visit.

(f) Those having -ŭi in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. accumbo,	accumbĕre,	accŭbui,	accubĭtum,	sit at meat ⁵ .
2. ħlo,	ħlĕre,	ħlŭi,	{ ħlĭtum, altum, }	nourish.
3. cŭlo,	cŭlĕre,	cŭlŭi,	cultum,	cultivate.
4. compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	. . . .	restrain.
5. concĭno,	conciĕre,	conciui,	(concentum),	{ sing in har- mony ⁶ .
6. consŭlo,	consŭlĕre,	consŭlŭi,	consultum,	consult.
7. ĕlĭcĭo,	ĕlĭcĕre,	ĕlĭcŭi,	ĕlĭcĭtum,	elicit.
8. excello,	excellĕre,	excellui,	excelsum,	excel ⁷ .
9. frĕmo,	frĕmĕre,	frĕmŭi,	frĕmĭtum,	roar.
10. frendo,	frendĕre,	(frendui),	{ frĕsum, fressum, }	gnash the teeth.
11. fŭro,	furĕre,	(furui),	. . . .	rage.
12. gĕmo,	gĕmĕre,	gĕmŭi,	gĕmĭtum,	groan.
13. gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnŭi,	gĕnĭtum,	beget.

¹ So all compounds of pello. Rĕpuli is also spelt reppuli.

² Scando becomes scendo in compounds, as, descendo, descendi, descensum, to descend.

³ So all compounds of curro, to run. But some have the reduplicated form also, as, decurro, to run down, which has Perf. decurri and decurri.

⁴ So all compounds of pendo, to weigh.

⁵ So all compounds of the unused Verb cumbo, to lie (a form of cŭbo, cubĕre).

⁶ So most compounds of cano, to sing.

⁷ So all compounds, except percello, § 151 e, of the unused Verb cello, to impel.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
14. mēto,	mētēre,	messūi,	messum,	reap.
15. mōlo,	mōlēre,	molūi,	molitum,	grind.
16. occūlo,	occūlēre,	occūlūi,	occultum,	bide.
17. pōno,	pōnēre,	pōsūi,	pōsitum,	put, place.
18. rāpiō ¹ ,	rāpēre,	rāpūi,	raptum,	seize.
19. sēro,	sērēre,	sērūi,	sertum,	sow.
20. sterto,	stertēre,	(stertui)	. . .	snore.
21. strēpo,	strēpēre,	strēpūi,	strēpitum,	make a noise.
22. texo,	texēre,	texūi,	textum,	weave.
23. trēmo,	trēmēre,	trēmūi,	. . .	tremble.
24. vōmo,	vōmēre,	vōmūi,	vōmītum,	vomit.

(g) Those having -vi in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. abolesco,	abolescēre,	abolēvi,	(abolitum),	decay.
2. adscisco,	adsciscēre,	adscivi,	adscitum,	take.
3. arcesso,	arcessēre,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	summon ² .
4. cerno,	cernēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	discern.
5. cognosco,	cognoscēre,	cognōvi,	cognitum,	know ³ .
6. cresco,	crescēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	grow.
7. cūpio,	cūpēre,	cūpivi,	cūpitum,	desire.
8. incesso,	incessēre,	incessivi,	. . .	attack.
9. līno,	līnēre,	{ lēvi, līvi, }	lītum,	smear.
10. nosco,	noscēre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	{ become ac- quainted with.
11. pasco,	pascēre,	pāvi,	pastum,	feed.
12. pēto,	pētēre,	pētīvi,	pētītum,	seek.
13. quaero ⁴ ,	quaerēre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	ask.
14. quiesco,	quiescēre,	quīēvi,	quīētum,	rest.
15. rūdo,	rudēre,	rudīvi,	(rudītum),	bray.
16. scisco,	sciscēre,	scīvi,	scītum,	ratify.
17. sēro,	sērēre,	sēvi,	sātum,	sow ⁵ .
18. sīno,	sīnēre,	sīvi,	(sītum),	allow.
19. sperno,	spernēre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	despise.
20. sterno,	sternēre,	strāvi,	strātum,	throw down.

¹ The compounds make -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, as, diripio, *tear in pieces*.

² So capesso, *take in hand*, and lacesso, *provoke*. Arcesso and lacesso sometimes have -iri for -i in Present Infinitive Passive. Arcesso is sometimes written accerso.

³ So agnosco, *to recognise*. Other compounds of nosco, *to become acquainted with*, have no Supine, except ignosco, *pardon*, which has ignotum.

⁴ The compounds make -quiro, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quisītum, as exquiro.

⁵ The compounds, as, insero, *engraft*, make -sēvi, -sītum.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
21.	suēsko,	suēscēre,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>be accustomed.</i>
22.	tēro,	tērēre,	trīvi,	trītum,	<i>rub.</i>

(b) Those ending in *-uo* in Present Indicative First Person Singular, which [with the exception of some already mentioned, as, *struo*, *struxi*, etc.] make *-ūi* in Perf. and *-ūtum* in Supine, as, *tribūo*, *tribūēre*, *tribūi*, *tribūtum*, *assign.* *Pluo*, *to rain*, has Perf. *plui* or *pluvi*. In this class must be included

1.	<i>solvo</i> ,	<i>solvēre</i> ,	<i>solvi</i> ,	<i>solūtum</i> ,	<i>loose, pay.</i>
2.	<i>volvo</i> ,	<i>volvēre</i> ,	<i>volvi</i> ,	<i>volūtum</i> ,	<i>roll.</i>

Ruo, *rush down*, makes Supine *rūtum*. The following have no Supine: *annuo*, *assent*; *congruo*, *agree*; *metuo*, *fear*; *pluo*, *rain*.

(j) Inceptives in *-sco*. These Verbs are formed (a) from Verbs chiefly of the Second Conjugation, (b) from Nouns. The former have no Perfects, except those of the Verbs from which they are derived, as, *pallesco* [*from palleo*], *I grow pale*, Perf. *pallui*; the latter either have no Perfects or form them in the same way in *-ui*, as, *dūresco* [*from durus*], *I grow hard*, Perf. *durui*. Scarcely any Inceptives have a Supine.

Of the exceptions to the above rule some, as *abolesco*, *adolesco*, *scisco*, *suesco*, have already been given. Notice the following:—

1.	<i>concupisco</i> ,	<i>concupiscēre</i> ,	<i>concupīvi</i> ,	<i>concupītum</i> ,	<i>desire.</i>
2.	<i>exardesco</i> ,	<i>exardescēre</i> ,	<i>exarsi</i> ,	<i>exarsum</i> ,	<i>blaze forth.</i>
3.	<i>expavesco</i> ,	<i>expavescēre</i> ,	<i>expāvi</i> ,	. . .	<i>grow alarmed.</i>
4.	<i>illucesco</i> ,	<i>illucescēre</i> ,	<i>illuxi</i> ,	. . .	<i>grow light.</i>
5.	<i>inveterasco</i> ,	<i>inveterascēre</i> ,	<i>inveteravi</i> ,	. . .	<i>grow old.</i>

(k) The Semi-Deponent, *fido*, *trust*, has Perfect *sisus sum*. The compounds *confido*, *trust confidently*, and *diffido*, *mistrust*, have Perfects *confīdi* and *confisus sum*, *diffīdi* and *diffisus sum*.

§ 152. The Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.
Regular Form,	<i>-īo</i> ,	<i>-īre</i> ,	<i>-īvi</i> ,	<i>-ītum</i> .
as,	<i>audīo</i> ,	<i>audīre</i> ,	<i>audīvi</i> ,	<i>audītum</i> .

Exceptions:—

(a) Those having regular Perf., but *-tum* in Supine.

	Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1.	<i>ēo</i> ,	<i>īre</i> ,	<i>īvi</i> (ii),	<i>ītum</i> ,	<i>go</i> ¹ .
2.	<i>sēpēlio</i> ,	<i>sēpelire</i> ,	<i>sēpēlīvi</i> ,	<i>sēpultum</i> ,	<i>bury.</i>

¹ The compounds usually make *ii* in Perf. *Vēneo*, *am for sale*, is used as the Passive of *vendo*, *to sell*, but has no Supine.

(b) Those having -i in Perf., -tum in Supine.

Pres.	Inf.	Perf.	Supine.	Meaning.
1. compĕrĭo, compĕrĭre,	compĕrĭ,	compertum,	ascertain.	
2. rĕpĕrĭo, rĕpĕrĭre,	rĕpĕrĭ,	rĕpertum,	find.	
3. vĕnĭo, vĕnĭre,	vĕnĭ,	ventum,	come.	

(c) Those having -si in Perf., -tum or -sum in Supine.

1. confercĭo, confercĭre,	confersi,	confertum,	press together ¹ .
2. ferĭo, ferĭre,	...	...	strike ² .
3. fulcĭo, fulcĭre,	fulsi,	fultum,	prop.
4. haurĭo, haurĭre,	hausi,	haustum,	draw up.
5. sancĭo, sancĭre,	sanci,	sanctum,	decree.
6. sarcĭo, sarcĭre,	sarsi,	sartum,	mend.
7. sentĭo, sentĭre,	sensi,	sensum,	feel.
8. saepĭo, saepĭre,	saepsi,	saeptum,	fence round.
9. vincĭo, vincĭre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	bind.

(d) Those having -ui in Perf., -tum in Supine.

1. amicio, amicĭre,	{ amicui, amixi, }	amictum,	clothe.
2. āpĕrĭo, āpĕrĭre,	āpĕrui,	āpertum,	uncover, open.
3. ōpĕrĭo, ōpĕrĭre,	ōpĕrui,	ōpertum,	cover.
4. sālĭo ³ , sālĭre,	sālui,	(saltum),	leap.

(e) Desideratives (§ 75) have no Supine, and with the exception of esurio, nupturio, parturio, no Perfect.

§ 153. Deponent Verbs.

(a) Deponents of the First Conjugation are all regular, making Infin. in -āri and Perfect Participle in -ātus.

(b) Deponents of the Second Conjugation make Inf. in -ēri and Perf. Part. in -itus, except

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
1. fātĕor ⁴ ,	fatĕri,	fassus,	acknowledge.
2. mīsĕrĕor,	mīsĕrĕri,	mīsĕrĭtus or mīsĕrtus,	pity.
3. rĕor,	rĕri,	rātus,	think.

¹ So all compounds of farcio, farcire, farsi, fartum, to stuff.

² Percussi, percussum, from percutio, are used for the Perfect and Supine of this Verb.

³ The compounds make -silio, -silire, -silui or -silii, -sultum, as, rĕsŭlĭo, to leap back.

⁴ The compounds make -fŭtĕor, -fŭtĕri, -fessus, as confŭtĕor, to confess.

(c) Deponents of the Third Conjugation have no regular form.
A great number end in *-scor* in Pres. Indic., e.g.:—

Pres.	Inf.	Perf. Part.	Meaning.
1. <i>ādīpiscor</i> ,	<i>ādīpisci</i> ,	<i>ādeptus</i> ,	<i>obtain</i> ¹ .
2. <i>commīniscor</i> ,	<i>commīnisci</i> ,	<i>commentus</i> ,	<i>devise</i> .
3. <i>expergiscor</i> ,	<i>expergisci</i> ,	<i>experrectus</i> ,	<i>awake</i> .
4. <i>īrascor</i> ,	<i>īrasci</i> ,	<i>īrātus</i> ,	<i>become angry</i> .
5. <i>nanciscor</i> ,	<i>nancisci</i> ,	<i>nactus or nactus</i> ,	<i>obtain</i> .
6. <i>nascor</i> ,	<i>nasci</i> ,	<i>nātus</i> ,	<i>be born</i> .
7. <i>oblīviscor</i> ,	<i>oblīvisci</i> ,	<i>oblītus</i> ,	<i>forget</i> .
8. <i>pāciscor</i> ,	<i>pācisci</i> ,	<i>pactus</i> ,	<i>bargain</i> .
9. <i>pascor</i> ,	<i>pāsci</i> ,	<i>pastus</i> ,	<i>feed</i> .
10. <i>prōfīciscor</i> ,	<i>prōfīcisci</i> ,	<i>prōfectus</i> ,	<i>set out, march</i> .
11. <i>reminiscor</i> ,	<i>reminisci</i> ,	. . .	<i>remember</i> .
12. <i>vescor</i> ,	<i>vesci</i> ,	. . .	<i>eat</i> .
13. <i>ulciscor</i> ,	<i>ulcisci</i> ,	<i>ultus</i> ,	<i>avenge</i> .

The others are:—

14. <i>amplector</i> ,	<i>amplecti</i> ,	<i>amplexus</i> ,	<i>embrace</i> .
15. <i>frūor</i> ,	<i>frūi</i> ,	<i>fructus and frūitus</i> ,	<i>enjoy</i> .
16. <i>fungor</i> ,	<i>fungi</i> ,	<i>functus</i> ,	<i>perform</i> .
17. <i>grādīor</i> ² ,	<i>grādi</i> ,	<i>gressus</i> ,	<i>march</i> .
18. <i>lābor</i> ,	<i>lābi</i> ,	<i>lapsus</i> ,	<i>glide</i> .
19. <i>lōquor</i> ,	<i>lōqui</i> ,	<i>locūtus</i> ,	<i>speak</i> .
20. <i>mōrīor</i> ,	<i>mōri</i> ,	<i>mortūus</i> ,	<i>die</i> .
21. <i>nītor</i> ,	<i>nīti</i> ,	<i>nīsus or nixus</i> ,	<i>strive</i> .
22. <i>pātīor</i> ³ ,	<i>pāti</i> ,	<i>passus</i> ,	<i>suffer, allow</i> .
23. <i>quēror</i> ,	<i>quēri</i> ,	<i>questus</i> ,	<i>complain</i> .
24. <i>sēquor</i>	<i>sēqui</i> ,	<i>secūtus</i> ,	<i>follow</i> .
25. <i>ūtōr</i> ,	<i>ūti</i> ,	<i>usus</i> ,	<i>use</i> .

(d) Deponents of the Fourth Conjugation make Inf. in *-īri*,
and Perf. Part. in *-itus*, except

1. <i>assentīor</i> ,	<i>assentīri</i> ,	<i>assensus</i> ,	<i>assent</i> .
2. <i>expērīor</i> ,	<i>expērīri</i> ,	<i>expertus</i> ,	<i>make trial of</i> .
3. <i>mētīor</i> ,	<i>mētīri</i> ,	<i>mensus</i> ,	<i>measure</i> .
4. <i>oppērīor</i> ,	<i>oppērīri</i> ,	<i>oppertus</i> ,	<i>wait for</i> .
5. <i>ordīor</i> ,	<i>ordīri</i> ,	<i>orsus</i> ,	<i>begin</i> .
6. <i>ōrīor</i> ,	<i>ōrīri</i> ,	<i>ortus</i> ,	<i>rise</i> .

¹ So all compounds of *apiscor*, *apisci*, *aptus*, to obtain.

² The compounds make *-grēdīor*, *-grēdi*, *-gressus*, as *aggrēdīor*, to attack.

³ The compounds make *-petīor*, *-peti*, *-pessus*, as *perpetīor*.

A TABLE OF RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF LATIN NOUNS.

§ 154. General Rules.

- (a) **Males, Mountains, Months, the Winds, the Stream, And People Masculine** we deem:
Isles are Feminine; to these
Add **Females, Cities, Countries, Trees**:
Indeclinables we call
Neuter Gender, one and all.

Note. For exceptions see Madvig §§ 28-31.

- (b)
1. Common are to either sex
 2. Artifex, and opifex,
 3. Conviva, vates, advēna,
 4. Testis, civis, incōla,
 5. Parens, sacerdos, custos, vindex,
 6. Adolescens, infans, index,
 7. Judex, heres, comes, dux,
 8. Princeps, municeps, conjux,
 9. Obses, ales, interpretes,
 10. Auctor, exul; and with these
 11. Bos, dama, talpa, tigris, grus,
 12. Canis and anguis, serpens, sus¹.

§ 155. Genders of the Five Declensions.

(a) *First Declension.* Feminine, except names of men, as *Publicola, Publicola*, and designations of men, as *poēta, a poet*, *nauta, a sailor*, together with *Hadria, or Adria, the Adriatic Sea*, and Greek Nouns in -as and -es, as *Aeneas, Atrides*, which are Masculine.

(b) *Second Declension.* -us and -er, Masculine; -um, Neuter.

Exceptions:—

- us.] 1. Alvus, colus, carbāsus,
2. hūmus, vannus, pampīnus,

¹ Line 2. *artificer, workman*; 3. *guest, prophet, new-comer*; 4. *witness, citizen, inhabitant*; 5. *parent, priest or priestess, guardian, avenger*; 6. *young man or woman, infant, informer*; 7. *judge, heir, companion, guide*; 8. *chief, burgess, husband or wife*; 9. *hostage, bird, interpreter*; 10. *author, exile*; 11. *ox or cow, deer, mole, tiger, crane*; 12. *dog, snake, serpent, swine*. Some other words, as *hospes, guest or host, miles, soldier, hostis, enemy*, etc., which from their *meaning* may be of either sex, are sometimes, but rarely, Feminine.

3. domus [Fourth as well as Second¹],
4. and jewels, Feminine are reckoned.
5. Then come pelāgus [*the sea*],
6. Vulgus², virus, Neuters three³.

(c) *Third Declension.* Gender various, according to termination of Nom. Case.

(1) Masculine terminations:—

{ Masculines -er, -or, and -o,
-os, and -es *increasing*, shew.

Exceptions:—

- er.] 1. Cadāver, and all *plants* in -er,
2. With iter, uber, verber, ver,
3. To the Neuters we refer;
4. One is Feminine, linter⁴.
- or.] 1. Four in -or, are Neuter, cor,
2. Marmor, aequor, and ador;
3. One is Feminine, arbor⁵.
- o.] 1. Caro, *flesh*, and endings three,
2. -do, -io, -go, must reckoned be
3. In Feminino Genere.
- os.] 1. Feminine are cos and dos,
2. With the Neuters reckon os⁶.
- es, increasing.] 1. Feminine are compes, teges,
2. Merces, merges, quies, seges.
3. Aes [aeris], is Neuter⁷.

(2) Feminine terminations:—

{ Feminines -do, -io, -go,
-is, -as, -aus, and -x, will shew,
-es, if no *increase* is needed,
-s by Consonant preceded.

¹ 'Domus' is declined like both the Second and Fourth Declensions, except that it avoids the endings, -me, -mu, -mi [in Plural], and -mis. Hence the memorial line,

Sperne me, mu, mi, mis, si declinare domus vis.

² 'Vulgus' is once or twice found masculine also.

³ Line 1. belly, distaff, canvas; 2. ground, winnowing-fan, vine-leaf;
3. house; 6. common people, poison.

⁴ Line 1. corpse; 2. journey, udder, whip, spring; 4. boat.

⁵ Line 1. heart; 2. marble, sea, spelt; 3. tree.

⁶ Line 1. whetstone, dowry; 2. bone [ūs, G. ossis] or mouth [ūs, G. ōris].

⁷ Line 1. fetter, mat; 2. reward, corn-sheaf, rest, crop; 3. brass.

Exceptions:—

- do, -go, -io.] 1. Males are ligo, vesperitilio,
2. Cardo, ordo, and papilio,
3. Pugio, scipio, and quaternio,
4. Curculio, harpago, and ternio¹.

Note. Besides ternio and quaternio, all names of numbers, as unio, binio, quinio, senio, etc., are Masculine. Optio, an adjutant, is, by meaning, Masculine. Margo, edge, is common.

- is.] 1. Many Latin Nouns in -is
2. Are Masculini Generis.
3. Amnis, axis, fascis, follis,
4. Callis², caulis, crinis, collis,
5. Fustis, ignis, orbis, ensis,
6. Panis, piscis, postis, mensis,
7. Torris, unguis, and annalis,
8. Glis, natalis, and canalis,
9. Vectis, vermis, cucumis,
10. Lapis, pulvis, and cinis³,
11. Sanguis, sentis⁴, and vomis.
12. Chiefly Masculine are clunis,
13. Corbis, torquis, finis, funis⁵.

- as.] 1. As, adamas, and elephas,
2. Are Masculina; Neuter vas⁶.

- x.] 1. Male are Nouns in e plus x,
2. Save nex, supellex, forfex, lex.
3. Common imbrex, and obex,
4. Pumex, cortex, and silex.
5. Three are Masculine in -ix,
6. Fornix, phoenix, and calix⁶.

- es not increasing.] 1. Two are Masculine in -es,
2. Verres and acinaces⁶.

¹ Line 1. spade, bat; 2. hinge, order, butterfly; 3. dagger, staff, the number four; 4. weevil, grappling-hook, the number three.

² Callis, cinis, and sentis are sometimes Feminine, but very rarely.

³ Line 3. river, axle, bundle, pair of bellows; 4. path, cabbage, hair, hill; 5. club, fire, circle, sword; 6. bread, fish, doorpost, month; 7. torch, nail, chronicle; 8. dormouse, birthday, canal; 9. lever, worm, cucumber; 10. stone, dust, cinder; 11. blood, thorn, ploughshare; 12. haunch; 13. basket, necklace, end, rope.

⁴ Line 1. as [a Roman coin], adamant, elephant; 2. vase. [But vas, vadis, bail, surety, is Masc.]

⁵ Line 2. murder, furniture, shears, law; 3. tile, bolt; 4. pumice-stone, bark, flint-stone; 6. arch, phoenix, cup.

⁶ Line 2. boar, scimitar.

- s preceded by a Consonant.]
1. Masculine are fons and mons,
 2. Rudens, torrens, dens, and pons,
 3. Chalybs, hydrops, tridens, cliens,
 4. Fractions of the as, as triens,
 5. Bidens [*bee*] and conflens,
 6. Oriens and occidens.
 7. Common Gender is forceps,
 8. Common also stirps, adep¹.

(3) Neuter terminations:—

{ Neuters end in -a, -c, -e,
-ar, -ur, -us, -l, -n, and -t.

Exceptions:—

- ur.] 1. Four are Masculine in -ur,
2. Furfur, turtur, vultur, fur².
- us.] 1. Feminine are some in -us
2. Increasing long, as servitus,
3. Tellus, juvenus, incus, palus,
4. Virtus, senectus, *atque* salus;
5. And [Genitive, pecūdis] pecus.
6. Masculine are lepus, mus³.
- l.] 1. Masculines in -l are mugil,
2. Sal and consul, sol and pugil⁴.
- n.] 1. Males in -n are ren and splen,
2. Lien, pecten, attagen⁵.

(d) Fourth Declension. -us, Masculine; -u, Neuter.

Exceptions:—

- us.] 1. Feminine are *trees* in -us,
2. With tribus, acus, porticus,
3. Domus, Idus and manus⁶.

Note. Specus, cave, Masc. or Fem., is also Neut. in N. V. A. Sing.

(e) Fifth Declension. Feminine, except dies, a day, which is Common in the Singular, Masculine in the Plural.

¹ Line 1. fountain, mountain; 2. rope, torrent, tooth, bridge; 3. steel, dropsy, trident, client; 4. third part; 5. confluence; 6. east, west; 7. pincers; 8. stock, fat.

² Line 2. bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.

³ Line 2. slavery; 3. earth, youth, arvil, marsh; 4. virtue or valour, old age, safety; 5. beast; 6. hare, mouse.

⁴ Line 1. mallet; 2. salt, consul, sun, boxer.

⁵ Line 1. kidney, spleen; 2. spleen, comb, woodcock.

⁶ Line 2. tribe, needle, portico; 3. house, Ides, hand.

NOTES ON THE DECLENSIONS.

§ 156. First Declension.

(a) Several Greek Proper Names in *-as* and *-es*, all Masculine, as, *Aeneas*, *Aeneas*, *Atrides*, *son of Atreus*, and some Feminine Nouns in *-e*, as, *Circe*, *Circe*, *crambe*, *cabbage*, belong to this Declension.

N.	Aenēas,	Atrīdes,	Circē,
V.	Aeneā,	Atridē [ā or ā, rare],	Circē,
Acc.	Aeneān [or -am],	Atridēn [or -am],	Circēn,
G.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circes [or -ae],
D.	Aeneae,	Atridae,	Circae,
Ab.	Aeneā.	Atridē [or -ā].	Circē.

Notes. The termination *-ides* or *-ades* means 'son of.' Nouns ending thus, as *Atrides*, are called *Patronymics*¹ (i.e. *father-named*).

The above Greek Nouns are declined in the Plural like 'mensa,' but, with the exception of the *Patronymics* [which have *-um* in Gen. Pl.], are rarely found in this Number.

(b) The old Latin Genitive Singular of this Declension ended in *-as*. Hence *paterfamilias*, *father of a family*. Another ending, used chiefly by poets, is *-āi*, as, *aulāi* for *aulae*.

(c) *-um* for *-arum* appears as Genitive Plural (1) of *Patronymics*, (2) of *drachma* and *amphora*, (3) in poetry of certain people, as, *Lapithūm*, *Teleboūm*, (4) of compounds of *colo* and *gigno*, as, *coelicolūm*, *terrigenūm*. *Duum* for *duarum* is frequent.

(d) *Dea*, *filia*, *liberta*², make *-abus* for *-is* in Dative and Ablative Plural, to distinguish them from the Datives and Ablatives of *deus*, *filius*, *libertus*.

§ 157. Second Declension.

(a) Several Greek Nouns in *-os* and *-on* belong to this Declension.

N. V.	Dēlōs,	Androgeōs,	Pelion,
Acc.	Delōn [or -um],	Androgeōn [ō or ōna],	Pelion,
Gen.	Deli,	Androgei [or -ō],	Pelii,
D. Ab.	Delo.	Androgeo.	Pelio.

¹ Feminine *Patronymics* end in *-is* or *-ias*, as *Thesēis*, *daughter of Theseus*, *Pleias*, *daughter of Pleione*.

² Goddess, daughter, freedwoman.

(b) Vir, *a man*, makes Acc. vir-um, Gen. vir-i, and so throughout. Deus, *God*, is thus declined:—

	N. V.	Acc.	Gen.	D. Abl.
Sing.	Deus,	Deum,	Dei,	Deo,
Plur.	Di [<i>or dii</i>],	Deos,	Deūm [<i>or deorum</i>],	Dis [<i>or diis</i>].

(c) -um for -orum appears as Genitive Plural (1) of trades, coins, weights, measures, and distributive numerals, as fabrūm, talentūm, denūm¹; (2) in poetry, of names of people, as Rutulūm; (3) of deus, vir, and liberi², as deūm, virūm, liberūm, and some others, chiefly in poetry. Duum for duorum is frequent.

§ 158. Third Declension.

(a) The Stems of this Declension are very numerous, and can only be learnt by practice. The following list of Nouns with their Genitive Cases will afford examples of the principal varieties. Some Adjectives which follow the Third Declension are also included. Greek Nouns are, as a rule, not included.

-E. rētē, <i>net</i> , rēt-is.	hīrundo, <i>swallow</i> ,
-L. ānīmal, <i>animal</i> , animāl-is.	hirundīn-is ⁶ .
sal, <i>salt</i> , sāl-is ³ .	margo, <i>edge</i> , marg-īnis ⁷ .
-N. carmen, <i>song</i> , carmīn-is ⁴ .	-AR. calcar, <i>spur</i> , calcār-is.
-O. latro, <i>robber</i> , latrōn-is ⁵ .	Caesar, <i>Caesar</i> , Caesār-is ⁸ .
orātio, <i>speech</i> , oratiōn-is.	-ER. carcer, <i>prison</i> , carcēr-is ⁹ .

¹ From faber, *smith*, talentum, *talent*, deni, *ten apiece*.

² God, man, children.

³ So the proper names, Hannibal, Hasdrubal, &c. But nearly all other nouns in -al follow animal, and make -ālis. Sol, *sun*, makes sōl-is; mel, *honey*, mell-is; exul, *exile*, consul, *consul*, exūl-is, consūl-is; pugil, *boxer*, vigil, *wakeful*, pugil-is, vigil-is.

⁴ So all verbal nouns in -men. Attagen, *heath-cock*, lien or splen, *spleen*, ren, *kidney*, make -ēnis.

⁵ So Aquīlo, *North wind*, bubo, *owl*, leo, *lion*, ligo, *spade*, praedo, *pirate*, &c. Macēdo, *Macedonian*, makes Macedōn-is; Apollo, *Apollo*, hōmo, *man*, turbo, *whirlwind*, Apollīn-is, homin-is, turbīn-is; caro, *flesh*, carnis.

⁶ So nearly all in -do, as, cardo, *hinge*, grando, *hail*, ordo, *rank*, &c., and all abstract nouns in -do, as, fortitudo, *bravery*, dulcedo, *sweetness*.

⁷ So nearly all in -go, as, caligo, *darkness*, Carthāgo, *Carthage*, &c., and all derived nouns in -go, as ferrūgo, *rust*, robīgo, *mildew*.

⁸ So nectar, *nectar*, baccar, *baccar* (a plant), jubar, *sunbeam*, par, *equal*. Far, *spelt*, farr-is. But most in -ar follow calcar.

⁹ So anser, *goose*, cadaver, *corpse*, &c.; plants in -er, as, acer, *maple*, papāver, *poppy*, &c.; uber, *fertile*, pauper, *poor*, puber, *grown up*, degener, *degenerate*. Ver, *spring*, makes vēr-is; iter, *journey*, itinēr-is.

-PS. princeps, <i>chief</i> , princĭp-is ¹ .	-IX. radix, <i>root</i> , radic-is ⁴ . - salix, <i>willow</i> , salic-is ⁵ .
-AX. pax, <i>peace</i> , pāc-is ² .	-OX. vox, <i>voice</i> , vōc-is ⁶ .
-EX. pollex, <i>thumb</i> , pollic-is ³ .	-UX. nux, <i>nut</i> , nūc-is ⁷ .

Note.—Other terminations, mostly rare, are, -MA, (all Greek), as, pōēmā, *poem*, poemāt-is; -C, as, lac, *milk*, lact-is; -BS, as, urbs, *city*, urb-is, caelebs, *bachelor*, caelĭb-is; -LX, as, calx, *beel*, and calx, *lime*, calc-is; -MS, as, hiems, *winter*, hiēm-is; -RS, as, ars, *art*, art-is,—so, pars, *part*, cohors, *cohort*; -AUS, as, fraus, *deceit*, laus, *praise*, fraud-is, laud-is; -T, as, caput, *head*, capĭt-is; -RX, as, arx, *citadel*, arc-is.

(b) List of Nouns having -im in Accusative, and -i in Ablative.

1. Vis, ravis, pelvis, sitis, tussis,
2. Sināpis, cūcūmis, āmussis,
3. Praesēpis, cannābis, secūris,
4. Charybdis, tigris, *atque* būris,
5. *Et Propria Nomina in -IS*,
6. *Ut* Syrtis, Tĭbris, Tamēsis⁸.

(c) List of Nouns having -em or -im in Accusative, and -e or -i in Ablative.

1. Restis, puppis, turris, navis,
2. Strigilis, sementis, clavis,
3. Messis, febris, *et* aqualis,
4. -em *vel* -im dant, *utrum* malis⁹.

¹ So all derivatives from capio, except auceps, *birdcatcher*, aucūp-is. Compounds of caput, as, biceps, *two-headed*, make -cĭpĭtis; inops, *poor*, inōp-is. Adeps, *fat*, follows princeps. Stirps, *stem*, stirp-is.

² So fornax, *furnace*, and verbals in -ax, as, audax. Fax, *torch*, makes fāc-is.

³ So most in -ex. Nex, *death*, makes nēc-is; lex, *law*, rex, *king*, lēg-is, rēg-is; grex, *flock*, grēg-is; rēmex, *rower*, remig-is; sēnex, *old man*, sen-is; supellex, *furniture*, supellectĭl-is.

⁴ So cervix, *neck*, cicātrix, *scar*, &c., and all feminines in -trix (§ 168, a. 1).

⁵ So calix, *cup*, fornix, *arch*. Nix, *snow*, niv-is; strix, *owl*, stri-gis.

⁶ So ferox, *spirited*, velox, *swift*, &c. Nox, *night*, makes noct-is.

⁷ So crux, *cross*, dux, *leader*, trux, *savage*. Lux, *light*, makes lūc-is, conjux, *husband or wife*, conjūg-is.

⁸ Line 1. force, hoarseness, basin, thirst, cough; 2. mustard, cucumber, carpenter's rule; 3. enclosure, hemp, axe; 4. charybdis, tiger, plough-tail; 5. and Proper Names in -is, 6. as Syrtis, Tiber, Thames.

⁹ Line 1. rope, stern, tower, ship; 2. flesh-scraper, seed-sowing, key; 3. harvest, fever, washing-basin, 4. give -em or -im, whichever you prefer.

(d) Nouns having regular Accusative in -em but Ablative in -e or -i, are linter, *boat*, uter, *vine-skin*, and,

1. Amnis, anguis, avis, bilis,
2. Civis, ignis, imber, finis,
3. Neptis, orbis, patruelis,
4. Postis, unguis, -i *si velis*¹.

(e) All Nouns which were originally Adjectives in -is follow tristis, and make Acc. -em, Abl. -i, as, Atheniensis [sc. 'homo'], an *Atbenian*; Aprilis [sc. mensis], *April*; annālis [sc. liber], *chronicle*. September, October, November, December [sc. mensis], follow 'acer.' Nouns of this class when they become Proper Names of men, as Juvenalis, Martialis, have only -e in Abl.

(f) Neuters in -e, -al, -ar, as, cubile, *bed*, animal, *animal*, calcar, *spur*, make -i in Abl. Sing., -ia in N. V. Acc. Pl. Rēte, *net*, makes Abl. rete, rarely reti: mare, *sea*, makes Abl. marē in Poetry only. Note also the following exceptions,

1. Ablatives in -e are far,
2. Baccar, nectar, and jubar².

(g) Rules for the Genitive Plural.

(A) Nouns not increasing make -ium, except,

1. Apis, senex, juvenis,
2. Proles, vates, volucris,
3. Pater, mater, frater, panis,
4. With accipiter and canis³.

(B) Nouns increasing make -um, except,

1. Monosyllabic Nouns of which the stem ends in two Consonants, as, dens, *tooth*, dent-, Gen. Pl. dent-ium.
2.
 1. Glis, mas, mus, lis,
 2. Compes, palus* and penātes,
 3. Nix, strix, faux, vis,
 4. Servitus*, and optimates⁴.
3. Neuters in -al and -ar, as, animal, *animal*, calcar, *spur*.
4. Nouns in -as, Gen. -atis, as civitas, *state*, and many Nouns and Participles in -ns, as parens, *a parent*, sapiens, *wise*, have both -ium and -um in Gen. Pl.
5.
 1. Sans Plural Genitives we class
 2. Cor, cos, and rus, sal, sol, and vas⁵.

¹ Line 1. river, snake, bird, bile; 2. citizen, fire, shower, end; 3. granddaughter, circle, cousin; 4. door-post, nail, -i if you like.

² Line 1. Spelt (a kind of grain); 2. baccar (a plant), nectar, sun-beam.

³ Line 1. Bee, old man, young man; 2. offspring, prophet, bird; 3. father, mother, brother, bread; 4. hawk, dog.

⁴ Line 1. dormouse, male, mouse, lawsuit; 2. fetter, marsh, household gods; 3. snow, screech-owl, throat, force; 4. slavery, aristocrats. Those marked * have both -ium and -um.

⁵ Line 2. Heart, whetstone, country, salt, sun, surety. Sans means without.

(b) Greek Nouns of this Declension in -as, -er, -is, and -os, make Acc. -em, or -a, as, *hēros, hero*, Acc. *hērōem or hērōā*; *āēr, air*, Acc. *āērem or āērā*. The Acc. Pl. usually ends in -ās.

Greek Nouns in -is and -ys make -i and -y in Voc. *Pōēsis, poetry*, has Acc. *pōēsim or -in*, Voc. *pōēsi*.

Greek Nouns in -es have the regular Latin form, and also, in certain cases, duplicate forms derived from the Greek, e.g. Acc. -ēn, -ēā, or -ētā, Gen. -i, -ei, or -ētis.

Orpheus is thus declined:—

Nom. Orpheus,	Acc. Orpheum or -ea,	D. Orpheo, -ēi, -ei,
Voc. Orpheu,	Gen. Orphei or -eos,	Ab. Orpheo.

§ 159. Fourth Declension.

(a) Like ictus are declined all Verbal Nouns in -tus and -sus, (§ 168, a, 2), except such as were originally Passive Participles, e.g. *legatus, ambassador*, *sponsus, bridegroom*, which are Second Declension.

(b) Nouns which take -ūbus in Dat. Abl. Pl. are dissyllables in -cus, as, *arcus, bow*; also, *tribus, tribe*; *partus, birth*; *portus, harbour*; *veru, spit*; *artus, Pl. limbs*. Several have both forms.

§ 160. Fifth Declension.

(a) The -e of the Genitive -ei is long when preceded by a vowel, as *faciēi*; *reī* and *fidēi* are perhaps doubtful.

(b) Only 'dies' and 'res' in this Declension have the Plural complete: the others either have N. V. Acc. Cases only, or no Plural at all.

§ 161. Adjectives.

(a) Many Adjectives signifying qualities that belong only to the male or female sex, as, *caelebs, unmarried*, have, as a rule, no Neuters¹, and are classed as Adjectives of One Termination. They make -e in Abl. Sing. and -um in Gen. Plural. Such are;—

1. Pauper, puber, hospes, compos,
2. Superstes, senex, sospes, impos,
3. Ales, deses, and reses,
4. Dives (*rich*), and locuples,
5. Compounds add of corpus, pes,
6. As bicorpor, quadrupes².

¹ Instances of the use of the Neuter are, *hospita aequora*, Virg. Aen. iii. 377, and *memor ingenium*, Liv. i. c. 32, but they are rarely found.

² Line 1. *poor, grown up, friendly, master of*; 2. *surviving, old, safe, not master of*; 3. *winged, inactive, inactive*; 4. *rich*; 6. *double-bodied, four-footed*.

The following are like the above, but have -i in Ablative Sing.

1. Degener, inops, memor,
2. Vigil, uber, immemor¹.

(b) *Vetus*, *old*, has endings like *melior* in the Oblique Cases. *Anceps*, *double*, *praeceps*, *headlong*, and *par*, *equal*, which are otherwise declined like *ingens*, have only -i in Abl. Singular. Compounds of *par*, as, *dispar*, *unequal*, have both -i and -e in Abl. Sing., but make -um in Gen. Plural. *Hebes*, *blunt*, and *teres*, *smoothly rounded*, are like *ingens*, but have no Gen. Plural.

(c) *Plus*, *more*, is defective in the Singular.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N. V. A.	. . .	plus.	plures.	plura.
Gen.		pluris.		plurium.
Dat.		. . .		pluribus.
Ab.		(plure).		pluribus.

Complures, *several*, has Neut. *complura*, *rarely* *compluria*.

(d) The Adjectives (*cēterus*), *cetera*, *ceterum*, *the rest*, and (*ludīcer* or *ludīcrus*), *ludīcra*, *ludīcrum*, *sportive*, have their Declension complete, with the exception of the Singular Nominative Masculine, which is not found in any writer.

§ 162. Comparison of Adjectives.

(a) The following instances of irregular Comparison, in addition to those given in § 27, are to be noticed. N.B. Square brackets, as [*egentior*], denote that the degree of Comparison is borrowed from some word of equivalent meaning; round brackets, as (*piissimus*), denote that the word is rare in Classical Latin.

mātūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturissimus. }
ēgēnus, <i>needy</i> ,	[<i>egentior</i>],	maturrimus. }
prōvīdus, <i>provident</i> ,	[<i>providentior</i>],	[<i>egentissimus</i>].
{ <i>dives</i> , <i>rich</i> ,	divitior,	[<i>providentissimus</i>].
{ (<i>dis</i>), <i>rich</i> ,	ditior,	divitissimus.
vetus, <i>old</i> ,	{ [<i>vetustior</i>] },	ditissimus.
(<i>potis</i> , <i>able</i>),	{ (<i>veterior</i>) },	veterrimus.
[<i>āvus</i> , <i>swift</i>],	potior, <i>preferable</i> ,	potissimus.
frūgi, <i>virtuous</i> ,	ocior,	ocissimus.
	frugalior,	frugalissimus.

¹ Line 1. *Degenerate*, *needy*, *mindful*; 2. *wakeful*, *fruitful*, *unmindful*.

(b) There are several exceptions to the rule given in § 26 (c) respecting Adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, e. g.,

assiduus, <i>constant</i> ,	assiduior,	assiduissimus.
egregius, <i>eminent</i> ,	egregior,	egregius.

pius, <i>dutiful</i> ,	magis pius,	{ maxime pius. (piissimus). (pientissimus).
strenuus, <i>active</i> ,	strenuior,	

(c) Adolescens, diuturnus, ingens, opimus, pronus, rusticus, satur¹, have Comparative, but no Superlative.

(d) Bellus, diversus, falsus, inclitus, invitus, meritus, novus, par², have Superlative, but no Comparative.

(e) Many Adjectives have no Comparative or Superlative. It is impossible to give comprehensive rules for these, but the following classification will assist the learner.

(1) Adjectives derived from Substantives, and signifying *made of, endowed with, and of or belonging to*, as, ligneus, *wooden*, auritus, *long-eared*, Gallicus, *Gallic*. See § 169, b.

(2) Most Adjectives compounded of Verbs or Substantives, as, armiger, *armour-bearing*, inops, *poor*.

Note. The exceptions are Adjectives ending in -dicus, -ficus, -volus, § 26, (4), and compounds of ars, mens, and cor, as incers, *inactive*, demens, *mad*, vecors, *foolish*, which are compared regularly, as, inertior, *dementior*, etc.

- (3) 1. Ferus, mirus, gnarus, gnavus,
2. Rudis, trux, *non habent gradus*³.

(f) Comparison of Adverbs.

bene, <i>well</i> ,	melius,	optimē.
male, <i>badly</i> ,	pejus,	peissime.
magnopere, <i>greatly</i> ,	magis,	maxime.
parum, <i>too little</i> ,	minus, <i>less</i> ,	minime.
multum, <i>much</i> ,	plus,	plurimum.
diu, <i>for a long time</i> ,	diutius,	diutissime.
intus, <i>within</i> ,	interius,	intime.
nuper, <i>lately</i> ,	. . .	nuperrime.
[prae, <i>before</i>],	prius,	primum.
prope, <i>near</i> ,	propius,	proxime.
saepe, <i>often</i> ,	saepius,	saepissime.
satis, <i>enough</i> ,	satius, <i>better</i>.	. . .
secus, <i>otherwise</i> ,	setius, <i>less</i>.	. . .

¹ Youthful, long-continued, vast, rich, bending-forward, rustic, full of food.

² Pretty, different, false, famous, unwilling, deserved, new, equal.

³ Line 1. Fierce, wonderful, knowing, active; 2. unpolished, savage, have no degrees (of comparison).

§ 163. *Anomalous and other Substantives.*

(a) The following are a few Declensions to be noticed:—

N. V. Jūpiter, *Jupiter*, has Acc. Jūvem, Gen. Jōvis, etc.N. V. Bos, *ox*, Acc. bōvem, has Gen. Pl. bōum, Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.N. V. Paterfamilias, *father of a family*, Acc. patremfamilias, Gen. patrisfamilias, etc. Here *familias* is an old form of the Gen., but there is also a form *paterfamiliae*, Acc. patremfamiliae, etc. In the Pl. we find *patresfamilias*, *patresfamiliae*, and *patresfamiliarum*. So *materfamilias*, *filiusfamilias*, etc.N. V. Acc. Jusjurandum, *oath*, Gen. jurisjurandi, Dat. jurijurando, etc. No Plural.N. V. Respublica, *state*, Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae.N. V. Supellex, *furniture*, Acc. supellectilem, Gen. supellectilis, Abl. supellectili or -e. No Plural.(b) *Heteroclite Nouns* are Nouns of varied declension. They are of two kinds:—(1) Those having one form of the Nom. but more than one of the Oblique Cases. Thus, many names of trees in -us, as, *cupressus*, *cypress*, *ficus*, *fig-tree*, *laurus*, *bay*, *pinus*, *pine*, are declined like both 2nd and 4th Declensions. (Note. *Quercus*, *oak*, is 4th Declension only, except Gen. Pl. *quercorum*.) Notice also,*fēmur*, *thigh*, Gen. *fēmōris* and *fēmīnis*.*jēcūr*, *liver*, „ *jēcōris*, and *jecinōris*.*jūgērūm*, *acre*, „ *jūgēri*, but Gen. Pl. *jūgerūm* (3rd Decl.),
D. Abl. *jugeribus* (*rarely jugeris*).*rēquies*, *rest*, „ *requiētis*, but Acc. *requiētem* and *requiem*, Abl. *requiete* and *requie*
(3rd and 5th Declensions).*vas*, *vessel* „ *vasis*, but Pl. *vasa*, *vasorum*, *vasis* (2nd Decl.).Note. Many other instances will be found under the head of *Heterogeneous Nouns*, § 163, c.(2) Those having two or more forms of Declension, as, *ēlēphantus*, G. -i, 2, and *ēlēphas*, G. -antis, 3, *an elephant*. Many Nouns of the 2nd Declension have forms in -us, and -um, as, *jūgūlus* and *jugulum*, *throat*. Many names of qualities follow both the 1st and 5th Declensions, as, *luxuria* and *luxuries*, *luxury*. Notice also,*pēnus*, Gen. *pēnōris*, 3,*pēnus*, „ *pēnūs*, 4,*pēnum*, „ *pēnī*, 2,} *provisions*.

plebs,	Gen. plebis, 3,	} <i>the common people.</i>
plēbes,	„ plebis, 3,	
plēbes,	„ plebei, 5,	
praesēpe,	„ praesepis, 3,	} <i>manger.</i>
praesēpes,	„ praesepis, 3,	
praesēpium,	„ praesepii, 2,	
tāpes,	„ tapētis, 3,	} <i>carpet.</i>
tapēte,	„ tapētis, 3,	
tapētum,	„ tapeti, 2,	
vespēra,	Gen. vesperae, 1,	} <i>evening.</i>
vesper,	Acc. vesperum, 2,	
vesper,	Abl. vespere, or -i, 3,	

(c) Heterogeneous Nouns are such as have different Gender (accompanied almost always by different form also) in Pl. from Sing., as,

carbāsus, f.,	<i>canvas,</i>	Pl. carbāsā, n.,	<i>sails.</i>
caelum, n.,	<i>heaven,</i>	„ caeli, m.	
frenum, n.,	<i>bit,</i>	„ freni, m.,	<i>and frena, n.</i>
jōcus, m.,	<i>a jest,</i>	„ joci, m.,	<i>and joca, n.</i>
lōcus, m.,	<i>place,</i>	„ loci, m.,	<i>and loca, n.</i>
ostrea, f.,	<i>oyster,</i>	„ ostreae, f.,	<i>and ostrea, n.</i>
Pergāmus, m.,	<i>Pergamus,</i>	„ Pergama, n.	
rastrum, n.,	<i>barrow,</i>	„ rastri, m.,	<i>and rastra, n.</i>
sībīlus, m.,	<i>bissing,</i>	„ sibili, m.,	<i>and sibila, n.</i>
Tartārus, m.,	<i>Tartarus,</i>	„ Tartara, n.	

Note. The Pl. balneae, a *public bath*, has no Sing. except balneum, a *private bath*, pl. balnea; and, on the other hand, epūlae, a *private banquet*, has no Sing. except epūlum, a *public entertainment*.

(d) The following Nouns (commonly called Indeclinable Nouns), have no flexions (§ 12); fas, *right*, nēfas, *wrong*; names of letters of the alphabet, as, alpha, beta; together with the Adjectives frugi, *virtuous*, and nequam, *worthless*, and the Numerals from quattuor, *four*, to centum, a *hundred*.

(e) Some Nouns are found only in one Oblique Case in the Singular, as,

verbēre, Abl., full pl., from (verber), *whip*.

So ambāge, from (ambages), *roundabout way*, compēde, from (compes), *fetter*, fauce, from (faux), *throat*, obīce, from (obex), *bolt*, have full plural but are only found in Ablative in the Singular.

Note. Round brackets, as (verber), denote that the word is not found in classical Latin.

Sponte, *by impulse*, noctu, *by night*, jussu, *by order*, injussu, *without orders*, natu, *by birth*, are only found in Abl. Sing., and have no plural.

(f) Some Nouns have only two cases in the Singular, as—

fors, *chance*, Abl. forte, no plural.

impētis, impete, no pl., from (impes), *violence*.

sordem, sorde, full pl., from (sordes), *filth*.

vepre, vepre, full pl., from (vepres), *bramble*.

(g) Some have only three cases in the Singular, as—

fidem, fidis, fide, full pl., from (fides), *lyre*.

lues (Nom.), luem, lue, no pl., *a pestilence*.

ōpem, opis, ope, full pl., in the sense of *riches*, *power*, from (ops), *help*.

precem, preci, prece, full pl., from (prex), *a prayer*.

vīcem, vicis, vice, pl. vīces, vicibus, no Gen., from (vicis), *change*.

vis (Nom.), vim, vi, *violence*. Pl. vīres, virium, viribus, *strength*.

(h) Some have only four cases in the Singular, as—

dāpem, dapis, dapi, dape, full pl., from (daps), *a feast*.

dicion-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (dicio), *dominion*.

frug-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (frux), *fruit*.

internecion-em, -is, -i, -e, full pl., from (internecio), *destruction*.

(j) Nouns used only in the Singular.

Names of Qualities, as sapientia, *wisdom*, senectus, *old age*, and of Materials, as ferrum, *iron*, aes, *bronze*, lignum, *wood*, are, from their meaning, only used in the Singular. Names of materials are, however, sometimes found in the Plural signifying objects made of the material, as aera, *works in bronze*, ligna, *logs*; and names of qualities are sometimes used in the Plural to denote instances of the quality, as omnes avaritiae, *all forms of avarice*. Proper Names are, of course, Singular, but may be used in the Plural to denote a class of names, just as in English. For, Cneius and Publius Scipio, *write*, Cneius et Publius Scipiones.

Pelagus, *the sea*, vulgus, *the common people*, virus, *poison*, besides many others already noticed, have no Plural.

(k) Nouns used only in the Plural.

There are very many nouns of this class in Latin. See Madvig, Lat. Gr. § 51. The following are a few:—

1. Artus, ilia, majōres,

3. Towns, as Veii; *inter alia*

2. Casses, mānes, and primōres,

4. Festivals, as Saturnalia¹.

¹ Line 1. Limbs, flanks, ancestors; 2. net, ghost, chief men; 3. Veii; 4. Saturnalia.

(1) List of Nouns which vary their meaning in the Plural:—

S. Aedes, <i>a temple.</i>	Littera, <i>letter of the alphabet.</i>
P. Aedes, <i>a house.*</i>	Litterae, <i>epistle, literature.*</i>
S. Auxilium, <i>help.</i>	Ludus, <i>play.</i>
P. Auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces.</i>	Ludi, <i>public games.*</i>
S. Carcer, <i>prison.</i>	Lustrum, <i>space of five years.</i>
P. Carcères, <i>starting place.*</i>	Lustra, <i>dens, lairs.*</i>
S. Castrum, <i>fort.</i>	Mos, <i>custom.</i>
P. Castra, <i>camp.</i>	Mores, <i>character.*</i>
S. Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Opëra, <i>labour.</i>
P. Copiae, <i>forces.</i>	Operae, <i>work-people.</i>
S. Finis, <i>end.</i>	Opem [Acc.], <i>help.</i>
P. Fines, <i>boundaries.</i>	Opes, <i>power, wealth.</i>
S. Gratia, <i>favour, popularity.</i>	Rus, <i>the country.</i>
P. Gratiae, <i>thanks or the Graces.</i>	Rura, <i>fields.</i>
S. Impedimentum, <i>hindrance.</i>	Sal, <i>salt.</i>
P. Impedimenta, <i>baggage.*</i>	Säles, <i>avit.</i>

Note. The Plurals in the above list which are marked with an asterisk may also follow the meanings of their Nominative Singular.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

§ 164. Numerals are of various kinds.

(a) *Cardinal*, as, unus, *one*, duo, *two*, etc. The first three Cardinals have been already declined (see § 23). From quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, they are indeclinable.

(b) *Ordinal*, as, primus, *first*, sëcundus, *second*.

(c) *Distributive*, as, singüli, *one apiece*, bini, *two apiece*.

(d) *Multiplicative*, as, simplex, *simple*, duplex, *twofold*.

(e) *Adverbial Numerals*, as, sëmél, *once*, bis, *twice*.

(f) There are also *Proportional Numerals*, ending in -plus, and meaning 'how many times as great,' as, duplus, *twice as great*; and a class of Adverbs formed from the Ordinals and ending in -o or -um, as, primo or primum, *for the first time*.

(g) The principal Numerals are given in the following Table:—

Arabic Numbers.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Multiplicatives.	Adverbs.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus, -a, -um	singŭlī, -ae, -a	simplex	sēmēl
2	II	duō	sēcundus <i>or</i> alter	binī	duplex	bis
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni <i>or</i> trīni	triplex	tēr
4	IV	quattuor	quartus	quāterni	quadruplex	quāter
5	V	quinque	quintus	quīni	quincuplex	quinquēs
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	• • •	sexies
7	VII	septem	septimus	septēni	septemplex	septies
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octōni	• • •	octies
9	IX	nōvem	nōvus	nōvēni	• • •	nōvies
10	X	dēcem	dēcimus	dēni	dēcplex	dēcies
11	XI	undēcim	undēcimus	undēni	• • •	undēcies
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcimus	duōdēni	• • •	duōdēcies
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcimus	terni dēni	• • •	trēdēcies
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcimus	quāterni dēni	• • •	quattuordēcies
15	XV	quīndēcim	quintus dēcimus	quīni dēni	• • •	quīndēcies
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcimus	seni dēni	• • •	sēdēcies
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septimus dēcimus	septēni dēni	• • •	septies dēcies
18	XVIII	duōdēviginti	duōdēvicesimus	duōdēvīcēni	Few Multi-	duōdēvīcēs
19	XIX	undēviginti	undēvicesimus	undēvīcēni	plicatives of	undēvīcēs
20	XX	viginti	vīcesimus	vīcēni	high num-	vīcēs
21	XXI	viginti ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et viginti	vīcesimus primus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcesimus	vīcēni singuli	bers are	sēmēl et vīcēs
22	XXII	vīginti duō <i>or</i> duo et vīginti	vīcesimus sēcundus <i>or</i> alter et vīcesimus	vīcēni bini	found in La-	tin, except bis et vīcēs
					centuplex, a	

30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus	trīcēni	<i>hundred-fold,</i> and one or two more.	trīces
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēni		quadrages
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsīmus	quinquāgēni		quingages
60	LX	sexagintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēni		sexages
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēni		septuages
80	LXXX	octogintā	octogēsīmus	octogēni		octages
90	XC	nonāgintā	nonāgēsīmus	nonāgēni		nonages
100	C	centum	centēsīmus	centēni		centies
101	CI	centum et ūnus	centesīmus primus	centeni singuli		centies sēnēl
200	CC	ducenti, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducentēni		ducenties
300	CCC	trecenti, -ae, -a	trecentēsīmus	trecentēni		trecenties
400	CCCC or CD	quadringenti, -ae, -a	quadringentesīmus	quadringēni		trecenties
500	D or IO	quingenti, -ae, -a	quingentesīmus	quingēni	<i>Note.</i> In the Ordinals -esīmus is often written for -esimus, and in the Ad- verbs -iens is often written for -ies.	quingenties
600	DC	sexcenti, -ae, -a	sexcentēsīmus	sexcentēni		sexcenties
700	DCC	septingenti, -ae, -a	septingentesīmus	septingēni		septingenties
800	DCCC	octingenti, -ae, -a	octingentesīmus	octingēni		octingenties
900	DCCCC	nongenti, -ae, -a	nongentesīmus	nongēni		nongenties
1,000	M or CIO	mille or millia	millesīmus	singulā millia		milles
2,000	MM or IIM	bis mille or duo millia	bis millesīmus	binā millia		bis milles
5,000	VM or ICD	quinquē mille or quinque millia	quinquēs millesi- mus	quīna millia		quinquies mil- lies
10,000	XM or CCICD	decēs mille or de- cem millia	decēs millesīmus	dēna millia		decies millies
1,000,000	CCCCICDCCD	decēs centum millia	decies centies mil- lesīmus	decies centēnā millia		decies centies millies.

§ 165. Notes on the Numerals.

(a) Cardinal Numerals.

(1) Mille is an indeclinable Adjective meaning *one thousand*, as, mille equites, 1000 *horsemen*: millia is a Neuter Plural Substantive of the Third Declension, meaning *thousands*, and takes a dependent Genitive, as, tria millia equitum, 3000 *horsemen*. Such phrases as tria millia quadringenti quadraginta sex milites interfecti sunt, 3446 *soldiers were killed*, are for tria millia militum et quadringenti quadraginta sex milites.

(2) bis mille, ter mille, etc., are found instead of duo, tria, etc., millia, chiefly in poetry; also with anni, as, bis mille anni, 2000 *years*, rather than duo millia annorum.

(3) When the smaller number is put first et is generally used, as, quattuor et viginti, like our 'four and twenty'; when the greater is put first et is omitted, as, viginti quattuor.

(4) Cardinals used *partitively* take a Genitive, '300 of the ships were lost,' trecentae navium amissae sunt.

(5) In translating twenty-one, thirty-one, etc., unus must be kept in the Singular. 'We sent twenty-one soldiers,' milites viginti unum, *or*, unum et viginti milites, misimus [i.e. unum militem et viginti milites].

(b) Ordinal Numerals.

(1) For 'the first and second legions,' say, prima et secunda [not primae et secundae] legiones.

(2) For 'thirteenth,' 'fourteenth,' etc., say, tertius decimus, quartus decimus, not decimus tertius, etc., except when following higher numbers, as, ducentessimus decimus tertius, *the 213th*.

(3) For 'forty-fifth,' 'seventy-eighth,' etc., say, fortieth fifth, seventieth eighth, quadragessimus quintus, etc., not quadraginta quintus. The Cardinals are not joined with Ordinals in Latin, as they are in English, except that unus is sometimes used for primus, as, unus et vicesimus, *the 21st*.

(4) The date of a year is expressed in Ordinals: For 'in the year 2875 B.C.,' say, 'in the year before Christ born twice-thousandth, eight-hundredth, seventieth, fifth,' anno ante Christum natum bis millesimo octingentesimo septuagesimo quinto.

(5) Fractions are expressed by 'pars' with Ordinals, as, septima pars, *one-seventh*, duae septimae partes, *two-sevenths*, etc. Pars is often omitted, only tertia, quarta, etc., being used. One-half is pars dimidia. When the denominator exceeds the numerator by 1 only, it is often omitted, as, duae partes, *two-thirds*, quattuor partes, *four-fifths*, etc. For fractions of the *as* see § 173.

(c) Distributive Numerals.

(1) Distributives shew that the number spoken of applies to each individual of a class. They are often indicated in English by the words *each*, *every*, or *apiece*. 'He gave each [*or*, every one] of them five books,' or, 'he gave them five books *apiece*,' *quinos libros iis dedit*. *Quinque libros iis dedit* would mean 'he gave them five books *in all*,' i.e. five books among the whole number.

(2) Use Distributives for Cardinals (1) with Substantives that have no Singular, (2) with Substantives that have a different meaning in the Plural from the Singular, as *una littera*, *one letter* (of the alphabet), but *binæ litteræ*, *two epistles*. *Unus*, however, is an exception: 'one camp,' *una castra*, not *singula castra*.

TABLE OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 166. The Simple Forms.

The Relative Pronoun,	Qui, quae, quod, <i>who or which</i> .
The Interrogative Pronoun,	{ Quis, (quis), quid, } <i>who? or what?</i> { Qui, quae, quod, }
The Indefinite Pronoun,	{ Quis, quā, quid, } <i>any</i> . { Qui, quae, quod, }

Note. These duplicate forms of the Interrogative and Indefinite should be carefully remembered. The first is the *Substantival* Form, as, *Quis hoc fecit? Who did this?* *Si quis hoc faciat, If any one should do this*; the second is the *Adjectival*, used when some Substantive is introduced agreeing with the Pronoun, as, *Qui puer hoc fecit? What boy did this?* *Si qui puer hoc faciat, If any boy should do this*¹. The same distinction is preserved in many of the following Compounds.

§ 167. The Compounds.

Quidam, a certain person.	Quidam, quaedam, quiddam, Subst. }
	quoddam, Adj. }
Quivis, } any you	Quivis, quaevis, quidvis, Subst. }
	quodvis, Adj. }
Quilibet, } please.	Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet, Subst. }
	quodlibet, Adj. }

¹ These distinctions are by no means rigidly observed among Latin writers, e.g. 'si quis Deus, en! ego, dicat,' Hor., but they should be noticed by beginners.

Quicunque, } *whoso-* Quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque.
 Quisquis, } *ever.* The forms in use of quisquis are—

Sing. N. Quisquis, *neut.* quidquid or quicquid.
Acc. *neut.* quidquid or quicquid.
Abl. Quoquo, quâquâ, quoquo.

Note. Quisquis is generally used as a Substantive, quicunque as an Adjective.

Quisque, *each.* Quisque, quaeque, quicque or quidque, Subst. }
 quodque, Adj. }

Unusquisque, *each one.* Unusquisque, unaquaeque, unumquicque or -dque, Subst. }
 unumquodque, Adj. }

Aliquis, *some.* Aliquis, aliquâ, aliquid, Subst. }
 Aliqui, aliquae, aliquod, Adj. }

Nescioquis (or nescio quis), *some*, is declined like aliquis.

Quispiam, *any one.* Quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam or quippiam, Subst. }
 quodpiam, Adj. }

Quisquam, *any one at all.* } Quisquam, quidquam or quicquam.

Note. Quisquam is generally a Substantive; the Adjective is ullus, -a, -um, *any at all*.

Ecquis, ecqua, ecquid, } *any?* is an Interrogative-Indefinite Pronoun.
 Ecqui, ecquae or -â, ecquod, }

The Interrogative part is translated by throwing the sentence in which the Pronoun occurs into the form of a question, and the Indefinite part by supplying the word *any*, as *Ecqua puero cura est?* *Has the boy any care?*

TERMINATIONS OF DERIVED NOUNS.

§ 168. Derived Substantives are formed, (a) from Verbs, (b) from other Substantives, (c) from Adjectives.

(a) Substantives derived from Verbs.

(1) *-tor* and *-sor* express the *person who does* the action denoted by the Verb, as, *amator*, a lover, from *amo*; *suasor*, an adviser, from *suadeo*. A feminine form in *-trix* is sometimes found, as, *victrix*.

Note. Some Substantives in *-tor* are derived immediately from other Substantives, as *viator*, a traveller, from *via*.

(2) *-tio*, *-tus*, *-sio*, and *-sus*, express the *action of the Verb*, as, *motio* and *motus*, a moving, from *moveo*; *visus* and *visio*, a seeing, from *video*.

(3) *-ium*, *-or*, and *-us* express the *effect of the action* denoted by the Verb as, *gaudium*, joy, from *gaudeo*; *amor*, love, from *amo*; *usus*, use, from *utor*.

- (4) **-mentum** and **-men** express *means of attaining* that which the Verb denotes, as, *documentum, means of teaching*, from *doceo*; *tutamen, means of defence*, from *tutor*.
 (5) **-ulum, -bulum, -culum**, denote *instrument*, as, *jac-ulum, instrument for throwing*, from *jacio*.

(b) Substantives derived from other Substantives.

- (1) **-lus, -la, -lum** [the termination varies according to the gender of the Primitive Substantive], express *diminutives*. These terminations assume various forms, e.g. **-ŭlus, -cŭlus, -ellus, -illus**; as, *cornic-ŭla, a little crook*, from *cornix*; *corni-cŭlum, a little horn*, from *cornu*; *libellus, a little book*, from *liber*; *lapillus, a little stone*, from *lapis*.

Note. **-leus** is sometimes a diminutive ending, as, *equuleus, a colt*, from *equus*.

- (2) **-ium** denotes either *an office*, as, *sacerdotium, priesthood*, the office of the sacerdos; or *an assemblage of individuals*, as, *collegium, a college*, or assembly of *collegae*.

- (3) **-ĕtum** denotes *a place where plants grow*, as *quercĕtum, a grove of oaks*, from *quercus*; *salictum (for salicĕtum), a willow-bed*, from *salix*.

- (4) **-arium** denotes *a receptacle*, as, *armarium, a cupboard*, from *arma*; and so, *a place where things grow*, as, *violarium, a violet bed*.

- (5) **-ile** denotes *a place where animals are kept*, as, *ovile, a sheepfold*, from *ovis*.

- (6) **-ia** denotes a country, and is usually derived from the name of its people, as, *Italia, the country of the Itali*.

- (7) **Patronymics** end in **-ādes**, if derived from Nouns of 1st Decl., or of 2nd Decl. in **-ius**, as *Aeneādes, son of Aeneas*; *Thestiādes, son of Thestius*; in **-īdes** if from Nouns of 2nd Decl. in **-us**, as *Priamīdes, son of Priam*; in **-īdes**, if from Nouns in **-eus**, as *Atrīdes, son of Atreus*. The feminines end in **-is**, as, *Nereis, daughter of Nereus*; or **-as**, as, *Thestias, daughter of Thestius*.

(c) Substantives derived from Adjectives.

These all denote the *quality* which the Adjective expresses attributively. The chief terminations are:

- (1) **-itas** or **-tas**, as, *bonitas, goodness*, the quality of the bonus.
 (2) **-ia**, as, *audacia, boldness*, the quality of the audax.
 (3) **-itia**, as, *justitia, justice*, the quality of the justus.
 (4) **-tudo**, as, *fortitudo, bravery*, the quality of the fortis.

§ 169. Derived Adjectives are formed, (a) from Verbs, (b) from Substantives, (c) from Adverbs and Prepositions.

(a) Adjectives formed from Verbs.

These usually have the force of Participles. The following are the principal terminations:

- (1) **-bundus** and **-eundus**. These = Present Active Participles, with intensive meaning, as *lacrymabundus*, *weeping profusely*, from *lacrymor*; *iracundus*, *full of wrath*, from *irascor*.
- (2) **-ax** denotes *active inclination*, as, *pugnax*, *fond of fighting*, from *pugno*.
- (3) **-idus**, chiefly from Intransitive Verbs, denotes *activity*, as, *fervidus*, *glowing*, from *ferveo*.
- (4) **-ilis** and **-ibilis** denote *capability*, and are generally used Passively, as, *docilis*, *teachable*, from *doceo*; *mobilis* (*for movibilis*), *movable*, from *moveo*. But some are used Actively, as, *terribilis*, *terrible* (i.e. *capable of terrifying*), from *terreo*.
- (5) **-tivus** denotes *a state resulting from verbal action*, as, *captivus*, *captive* (i.e. in a state of having been taken), from *capio*.
- (6) **-tilis** and **-silis** have the force of Perfect Passive Participles, as, *sectilis*, *cut*, from *seco*; *pensilis*, *hung up*, from *pendo*.

(b) Adjectives formed from Substantives.

These express, (a) *made of*, (b) *full of*, (c) *endowed with*, (d) *of or belonging to*. The last class is by far the most numerous.

(1) The chief terminations expressing *made of* are:

1. **-eus**, as, *ligneus*, *wooden*, from *lignum*.
2. **-nus**, as, *quernus*, *oaken*, from *quercus*.

Note. These terminations may, however, express *of* or *belonging to*, when the Noun from which they are derived is not a Noun of Matter, as, *virgineus*, *maternus*.

(2) The chief terminations expressing *full of* are:

1. **-osus**, as, *nivōsus*, *full of snow*, from *nix*, *nivis*.
2. **-lentus**, as, *vinōlentus*, *full of wine*, from *vinum*.

(3) Adjectives signifying *endowed with* end in **-tus**, and have the nature of Perfect Passive Participles, as, *aurātus*, *gilded*, from *aurum*; *aurītus*, *long-eared*, from *auris*; *nasūtus*, *long-nosed*, from *nasus*.

(4) The terminations expressing *of* or *belonging to* are very numerous. The following are the most common:

1. **-ius**, as, *regius*, *royal*, from *rex*.
2. **-icus**, as, *Gallicus*, *Gallie*, from *Gallus*.
3. **-ivus**, as, *aestivus*, *summer-*, from *aestas*.

4. -lis (or -ris), preceded by a vowel, as, *mortalis*, *mortal*, from *mors*; *popularis*, *popular*, from *populus*; *fidelis*, *faithful*, from *fides*; *hostilis*, *hostile*, from *hostis*.

Note. The termination -ris is the same as -lis in meaning, and seems to be used in order to avoid a repetition of the letter l, as, *solaris* for *solalis*.

5. -nus preceded by a vowel, as, *montānus*, *mountainous*, from *mons*; *terrēnus*, *of earth*, from *terra*; *caninus*, *canine*, from *canis*.

6. -ter or -tis, as, *pedester*, *pedestrian*, from *pes*; *caelestis*, *heavenly*, from *caelum*.

7. -as and -ensis are usually confined to Adjectives derived from names of Places, as *Aquinas*, *of Aquinum*; *Atheniensis*, *Athenian*.

(c) A few Adjectives are derived from Adverbs and Prepositions, as, *diuturnus*, *lasting*, from *diu*; *postērus*, *next*, from *post*.

The terminations of derived Verbs are given above, § 75.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

§ 170. The Roman Calendar agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each; but their manner of dating was very different.

Each month had three distinctive days, namely:—

The Kalends [Kalendae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 1st.

The Nones [Nonae, Gen. -arum], which fell on the 5th, *usually*.

The Ides [Idūs, Gen. -uum], which fell on the 13th, *usually*.

But in March, May, July, and October, the Nones fell on the 7th and the Ides on the 15th.

§ 171. In dating:—

(a) The 1st, 5th, and 13th were denoted by the Ablatives, Kalendis, Nonis, Idibus, with the name of the month added in agreement, as *Kalendis Ianuariis*, *the 1st of January*. But in March, May, July, and October, Nonis and Idibus stood for 7th and 15th respectively.

(b) The day before the Kalends, Nones, or Ides, was denoted by the Adverb *pridie*, *the day before*, used like a Preposition governing an Accusative Case, as, *pridie Kalendas Ianuarias*, *the 31st of December*, *pridie Idus Ianuarias*, *the 12th of January*, *pridie Idus Martias*, *the 14th of March*.

(c) All other days were denoted by reckoning *back* from the next ensuing Kalends, Nones, or Ides. The reckoning included not only the day reckoned *from* but the day reckoned *to*; thus the 30th of December was called the *third* not the *second* day before the Kalends of January. The form for expressing the date thus found is as follows:—

Ante diem tertium Kalendas Januarias, *the 30th of December.*

Ante diem octavum Idus Januarias, *the 6th of January.*

Ante diem quartum Nonas Martias, *the 4th of March.*

Ante diem duodevicesimum Kalendas Maias, *the 14th of April.*

§ 172. A short form for expressing the above dates is as follows:—

a. d. III. Kal. Jan., *the 30th of December.*

a. d. VIII. Id. Jan., *the 6th of January.*

a. d. IV. Non. Mart., *the 4th of March.*

a. d. XVIII. Kal. Mai., *the 14th of April.*

Note 1. An easy method of finding the Roman date corresponding to an English is by adding 1 to the Nones or Ides, or 2 to the days of the month, and then subtracting the English date from the result. Thus, to find the Roman date for the 6th of January:— $13 + 1 = 14$, and $14 - 6 = 8$. Hence our 6th of January is the Roman 8th day before the Ides. So, the 4th of March is $7 + 1 - 4 = 4$; the 14th of April is $30 + 2 - 14 = 18$, etc.

Note 2. In leap-year the 24th of February [*ante diem sextum Kalendas Martias, or a. d. VI. Kal. Mart.*] was reckoned for two consecutive days. Hence this day was called *dies bissextus*, and leap-year itself *annus bissextus*. In such years the additional day was not reckoned in calculating the date from the 14th to the 24th of February. Thus a. d. X. Kal. Mart. stood for the 20th of February, whether the year was leap year or not.

Note 3. The phrase for expressing a date was considered as a single word admitting of government by the Prepositions *in* and *ex*, as, *Supplicationes edictae sunt in antediem quartum et tertium et pridie Kalendas Novembres, Public thanksgivings were decreed for the 29th, 30th, and 31st of October*; *Supplicatio indicta est ex antediem quintum Idus Octobres, A public thanksgiving was decreed, beginning from the 11th of October.*

Note 4. The names of the months were Januarius, Februarius, Martius, Aprilis, Maius, Junius, Julius, Augustus, September, October, November, December. These are Adjectives, but may be used as Substantives, *mensis* being understood. See § 158, e.

Note 5. The months of July and August were called *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* before the time of the Emperor Augustus.

ROMAN WEIGHTS AND MONEY.

§ 173. The *as*, or *pound*, also called *libra*, which served as the standard unit both for weights and coins, was divided into twelve parts.

Assis Romani partes sunt *uncia*, *sextans*,
Quadrans, *atque triens*, *quincunx*, et *semis*, et inde
Septunx, *bes*, *dodrans*; *dextanti* *junge deuncem*.

<i>Uncia</i>	=	$\frac{1}{12}$	of an <i>as</i> = 1 ounce.
<i>Sextans</i>	=	$\frac{2}{12} = \frac{1}{6}$	of an <i>as</i> = 2 ounces.
<i>Quadrans</i>	=	$\frac{3}{12} = \frac{1}{4}$	" = 3 "
<i>Triens</i>	=	$\frac{4}{12} = \frac{1}{3}$	" = 4 "
<i>Quincunx</i>	=	$\frac{5}{12}$	" = 5 "
<i>Semis</i>	=	$\frac{6}{12} = \frac{1}{2}$	" = 6 "
<i>Septunx</i>	=	$\frac{7}{12}$	" = 7 "
<i>Bes</i>	=	$\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2}{3}$	" = 8 "
<i>Dodrans</i>	=	$\frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$	" = 9 "
<i>Dextans</i>	=	$\frac{10}{12} = \frac{5}{6}$	" = 10 "
<i>Deunx</i>	=	$\frac{11}{12}$	" = 11 "

Terms used in bequeathing property. Heres *ex asse*, heir to the whole estate; heres *ex deunce*, *dextante*, etc., heir to eleven twelfths, five sixths, etc.

§ 174. *Interest.* In the later times of the republic the Romans reckoned interest by the month; not by the year. Hence, asses usurae = 1 *as* per cent. per mensem = 12 per cent. per annum; deunces usurae = $\frac{1}{12}$ of an *as* per cent. per mensem = 11 per cent. per annum, and so on. Instead of asses usurae we sometimes find the phrase *centesimae usurae*, or simply *centesimae*, i. e. hundredth parts of the principal paid monthly, or 12 per cent. per annum. *Binae centesimae* = 24 per cent.

Note. For the phrase *fenus unciarium* see Smith's Dictionary of Antiquities.

§ 175. The *Sestertius*, or *nummus sestertius*, was a coin of the value of $2\frac{1}{2}$ asses, being rather more than twopence of our money before the reign of Augustus, and rather less than that sum afterwards. It is denoted by the symbol HS. (i. e. L(*ibra*) L(*ibra*) S(*emis*), or perhaps IIS(*emis*), $2\frac{1}{2}$ pounds).

The sum of 1000 *Sestertii* was called *Sestertium*, roughly equivalent to about £8 English money. This also was denoted by the symbol HS.

The expression for a million *sestertii* was *decies centena millia sestertiũ* (for -orum); for 1,100,000 *sestertii*, *undecies centena millia sestertiũ*, etc. The words *centena millia* are often understood; hence, *decies sestertium*, a million; *millies HS.*, a hundred millions, etc.

In order to distinguish HS. meaning *sestertia* from HS. meaning *sestertii*, a line is sometimes written over the subjoined numeral. Thus, HS.MD.=1500 *sestertii*, but HS.MD.=1500 *sestertia*, i. e. 1,500,000 *sestertii*. To indicate *centena millia sestertiūm* a line is sometimes placed over the whole expression, as HS.MD.=*millies et quingenties centena millia sestertiūm*=150,000,000 *sestertii* or 150,000 *sestertia*.

ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 176. Proper Names.

A.	Aulus.	N.	Nūmērius.
C., G.	Caius, Gaius.	P.	Publius.
Cn., Gn.	Cnaeus, Gnaeus.	Q.	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	S., or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius
L.	Lūcius.	Sp.	Spūrius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'.	Mānius.	Ti.	Tībērius

For women's names these letters are inverted, as D. Gaia.

Note. All the above are *praenomina* or individual names. Besides his *praenomen*, a Roman had a *nomen* which showed his *gens*, and a *cognomen* showing to what branch or family of the *gens* he belonged. Thus, Marcus Tullius Cicero denotes 'Marcus of the Cicero branch of the Tullia gens.' An *agnomen* was usually a title of honour, e.g. *Africanus*, *Magnus*, etc., or a title denoting adoption, as *Octavianus* (being the name of his former *gens* with the termination *-anus*), assumed by C. Octavius after being adopted by C. Julius Caesar, whose *praenomen*, *nomen* and *cognomen* he also assumed, and became known as Caius Julius Caesar Octavianus.

§ 177. Miscellaneous.

A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.	P. C.	Patres conscripti.
Cos.	Consul, -e.	P. R.	Populus Romanus.
Coss.	Consul-es, -ibus.	S. C.	Senatūs consultum.
D. O. M.	Deo Optimo Maximo.	S.	Salutem.
D. D.	Dono dedit.	S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit (<i>or dat</i>).
F.	Filius.	S. P. Q. R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
HS.	Sesterti-us, -um.	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, Ego valeo.
Imp.	Imperator.		
Id.	Idus.		
Kal.	Kalendae.		
Non.	Nonae.		

Note. For a more complete list of Abbreviations see Roby's Latin Grammar, vol. i. Appendix G, or Public Schools Lat. Gr., Appendix K.

EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN TERMS USED BY GRAMMARIANS.

§ 178. Letters.

Uncial letters. Capitals.

Cursive letters. Small letters.

Mutes. The letters *c* (*k, q*), *g, b*; *t, d*; *p, b, f* (*v*).

Nasals. The letters *m, n*.

Liquids. The letters *l, r*.

Spirants. The letters *f, b, j, s, v*.

Double Letters. The letters *x, z*.

Gutturals. The throat sounds, viz. *c, g, b, n, q, x*.

Dentals. The teeth sounds, viz. *d, j, l, n, r, s, t, z*.

Labials. The lip sounds, viz. *p, b, m, f, v*.

§ 179. Syllables, etc.

Ultima. The last syllable of a word.

Penultima. The last syllable but one.

Antepenultima. The last syllable but two.

Enclitic. A name given to words which are attached to the end of some other word in the sentence, as *-que, and*.

§ 180. Nouns.

Parisyllabic. Having the same number of syllables in the Oblique Cases as in the Nominative, i. e. not increasing.

Imparisyllabic. Increasing in the Oblique Cases.

Root. The Root of a word is that part which it has in common with other kindred words. Thus the root of *bellator, a warrior*, is *bell*, which it has in common with *bellum* and *bellare*.

Nouns of Common Gender. Nouns which can be used either as Masculine or Feminine, to suit the sex referred to, as, *parents, a parent*; see § 154 *b*.

Nouns of Epicene Gender. Certain names of animals having only one Gender, whichever be the sex referred to, as, *passer, Masc. a sparrow; vulpes, Fem. a fox, aquila, Fem. an eagle*. To indicate sex, when necessary, the words *mas* or *femina* are added, as *passer mas, cock-sparrow*.

Nouns of Doubtful Gender. Nouns which are used either Masculine or Feminine, without regard to the sex signified, as, *talpa, Masc. or Fem., a mole*.

§ 181. Verbs.

Aorist (=Indefinite). Properly the Tense denoting Indefinite Time, whether Past, Present, or Future (see p. 67), but in Latin restricted to Past Time.

Protasis and Apodosis. In a Conditional Sentence, as, Si voluisset, fecisset, the si clause is called the Protasis, the other the Apodosis.

§ 182. Etymological Figures.

Assimilation. When a consonant changes itself to one which follows it, or to one like that which follows; thus, sub-pono becomes suppono; in-berbis becomes imberbis.

Apbaerēsis. Cutting off letters from beginning, as, nosco *for* gnosco.

Syncopē. Taking away from middle, as, periculum *for* pericūlum.

Apocopē. Cutting off from end, as, dic *for* dice.

Antitbesis. Changing one letter for another, as, būbus *for* bōbus.

Metathēsis. Transposition of a letter or syllable, as, cornus *for* cornū, accerso *for* accerso.

Tmesis. Separation of parts of a compound word by the insertion of one or more words between the parts, as, septem subjecta trioni *for* subjecta septemtrioni.

§ 183. Syntactical Figures.

Ellipse. Omission of something, e.g. of a Substantive, as, ferina, venison [supply caro]; of a Verb, as, Nam Polydorus ego, *For* I am Polydorus [supply sum].

Pleonasm. Using more words than are necessary to express the meaning, as, sic ore locutus est, where 'ore' is redundant.

Zeugma. When two words or two clauses have the same Verb, which does not apply equally to both; so that for one of them another Verb (to be gathered from the sense of the passage) must be mentally supplied, as, Inceptoque et sedibus haeret in isdem, *He abides by his resolve, and remains seated in the same place.*

Asyndeton. Omission of Conjunctions, as, veni, vidi, vici.

Hendiādys. Use of two Substantives instead of Substantive and Adjective to express one object, as, pateris libamus et auro *for* libamus aureis pateris.

Enallagē. Use of one word for another, e.g. one Part of Speech for another, one Case for another, use of Singular for Plural, etc.

Hypallagē. Interchange of Cases, as, dare classibus Austros *for* dare classes Austris, or using an Adjective in agreement with a Noun other than that to which it belongs in sense, as, sagitta celeres transilit umbras.

Prolepsis. The poets sometimes put an Adjective or Participle in agreement with a Substantive, though the quality implied cannot belong to it until the action of the Verb to which the Substantive belongs is completed; as, *Scuta latentia condunt*, which means, *They stow away the shields so that they become hidden*, i. e. *hide the shields out of sight*; where *latentia* is said to belong to *scuta proleptically*, that is, by anticipation. Compare the English phrases 'to strike a man dead,' 'to beat him black and blue,' etc., and *Macbeth*, Act iii. Sc. 4, 'Ere humane statute purged the gentle weal.'

Synæsis or *Constructio ad Sensum.* When the Verb agrees not in grammar but in sense with its Subject, the Adjective with its Substantive, or the Relative with its Antecedent, as, *fatale monstrum, quae*, etc., *Hor. Od. I.*, xxxvii. 21. See also §§ 216, 220.

Anacoluthon. When the latter part of a sentence does not agree in syntax with the former; which sometimes happens when a parenthetical clause has intervened, so that the author has lost sight of the construction with which he set out.

§ 184. Prosody.

Foot. A name given to a set of two or more syllables by which lines of Latin poetry are divided.

Scansion. } The distribution of a verse of poetry into its proper
Scanning. } feet.

Dactyl. A foot consisting of one long and two short syllables, as, *cārmīnā*.

Spondee. A foot consisting of two long syllables, as, *mēnsās*.

Other kinds of feet. Pyrrhic, ∪ ∪; Iambus, ∪ -; Trochee, - ∪; Anapaest, ∪ ∪ -; Tribrach, ∪ ∪ ∪.

Hexameter (ἑξ, six; μέτρον, measure). A verse of six feet, of which the first four may be either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth must be a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee, as,

Tītūrē | *tū pātū*|*lāē rēcū*|*bāns sūb* | *tēgmīnē* | *fāgī*||.

Pentameter (πέντε, five). A verse of five feet. It has two divisions, each consisting of two feet and a long syllable, the two long syllables virtually constituting the fifth foot. The first half may have either Dactyls or Spondees, the second half Dactyls only, as,

Rēs ēst | *sōllīcī* | *tī* || *plēnā tī* | *mōrīs ā* | *mōr* ||.

Note 1. The last syllable of a verse may be either long or short, but a short vowel-ending should be avoided, especially in the Pentameter.

Note 2. A Hexameter should end with a trisyllable or dissyllable word. A Pentameter should end with a dissyllable, which should be either a Substantive, Verb, or Personal or Possessive Pronoun.

Caesura. The point in a verse where a word ends, so as to cut [caedo] the foot in two, and the voice pauses a little. In a Hexameter line a Caesura should usually occur in the third foot, as,

Tītŷrē | tū pātū | lāē rēcū | bans, etc.

Pentbemimeral Caesura (πέντε, five, ἡμί, half, μέρος, a part). A Caesura after the fifth half-foot, as in the line just given.

Heptbemimeral Caesura (ἑπτά, seven). A Caesura occurring after the seventh half-foot, as,

Förmō | sām rēsō | nārē dō | cēs Āmā | rŷllŷdā | sŷlvās||.

Strong and Weak Caesura. In the Hexameter last given the 3rd foot contains what is called a *weak*, the 4th a *strong* Caesura.

Catalectic. A name given to a verse which is incomplete by one syllable. Thus, each of the two divisions of the Pentameter is said to be Catalectic.

Metre or Measure (μέτρον) is used in two senses;—(a) A definite system or combination of particular Verses; e.g. the *Elegiac Metre*, the *Iambic Metre*, etc. (b) A definite portion of a particular Verse. In Verses made up of Dactyls and Spondees, like the Hexameter and Pentameter, one Foot makes a Metre, (hence the name *Hexameter*, the *six-measure verse*, and *Pentameter*, the *five-measure verse*). But in Verses made up of Anapaests, Tribrachs, Iambics, or Trochees, a Metre consists of two feet. Hence the Iambic *senarius*, or Verse of six Feet, is called an Iambic *Trimeter*.

Arsis and Thesis (ἄρσις, θέσις). The syllable on which the Ictus or stress of the voice falls is said to be in Arsis. In Dactylic Verses the first syllable of each foot is in Arsis, the other syllable or syllables being in Thesis. A short syllable in Arsis is sometimes lengthened by the force of the Ictus, as,

Līmīnā | quē laūr | ūsquē dē | i, etc.

Synaloepha. Elision (or cutting off) of a final vowel before another vowel or *h* at the beginning of the following word, as, sūrg' āg' ēt, for sūrgē āgē ēt, and pōllŷēr' hōspitŷm for pōllŷērē hōspitŷm. Heu and O are never elided.

Ecthlipsis. Elision of *m* and its vowel in the same way, as, mōnstr' hōrrēnd' infōrme, etc., for mōnstrŷm, hōrrēndŷm infōrme.

Synaeresis. Contraction of two vowels into one, as, dēindē for dēindē.

Diaeresis. Resolution of one vowel into two, or of a diphthong into two vowels, as, ēvōlŷissē for ēvōlvŷissē, aquāi for aquae.

LAWS OF QUANTITY.

§ 185. General Rules.

(a) Monosyllables are long, as, mē, pār, ōs (*mouth*), hīc (*here*).

Exceptions.

Words in b, d, l, and t,
Words enclitic, -quē, -nē, -vē,
Ēs (from sum), the Pronoun is,
Nominatives hīc and quīs,
Ān, cōr, ōs, nēc, fūc, and fēr,
In, vīr, cīs, pēr, bīs, and tēr.

(b) A vowel before another vowel, or before h, in the same word, is short, as mēus, prōhibēo.

Exceptions. (a) Many Greek words, as Aenēas; (b) diēi, aulāi, and the like; diūs, ōhe, ōhe, Dīana; (c) the i in fio, except before ēr, as, omnia jam fiunt, fieri quae posse negabam; (d) the i of Genitives in -ius, which is sometimes doubtful, as uniūs, illiūs, but short in alteriūs, utriūs, long in aliūs, soliūs, totiūs.

(c) All diphthongs and contracted syllables are long, as aut, prāeter, nīl (for nihil).

Exception. Prae is shortened before a vowel, as prāeustus.

(d) A vowel before two consonants, or before j, x, z, in the same word, is long *by position*, as vētus, Ajax, rēxi, Amāzon.

Exceptions. Bijugus, quadrijugus.

Note 1. This rule applies also to final syllables ending in a Consonant, when the next word in the verse begins with a Consonant. Thus the syllables -or, -at, nec, sit in the following line are long *by position*:—

Tālis ām | ōr tēnē | āt nēc | sīt mīhī | cūrā mēd | ōī ||.

Note 2. A short final vowel cannot remain short before any word beginning with sc, sm, sp, sq, st, x, or z, except smaragdus, Scamander, Xanthus, Zacynthus. Virgil has *lengthened* such a vowel once, perhaps, in the doubtful reading dātē | tēlā | scānditē | mūrōs ||, Æn. ix. 37, but this is a licence which must never be imitated. Avoid the position altogether.

(e) A vowel *short by nature* becomes doubtful before a *mute* (§ 178) when followed by *l* or *r*, rarely when followed by *m* or *n*. Thus pāter has Gen. pātris. (But a long vowel always remains long: thus, the Gen. of māter is always mātris, never mātris.)

Exceptions. In compound words this rule is not often observed: thus, ab and ob in āb-luo ōb-ruo, are never shortened; the *re* in rē-pleo, rē-primo, etc., is never lengthened.

(f) Derived words usually follow the quantity of their primitives, as perlēgo from lēgo, legēre, but ablēgo from lēgo, legāre. There are however many exceptions to this rule.

(g) Dissyllabic Perfects are long, as vīdi.

Exceptions.

Bībi, dēdi, fīdi,
Stēti, tūli, scīdi.

(b) Dissyllabic Supines are long, as *vīsum*.

Exceptions. Dātum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum,
Rātum, rūtum, sātum, sĭtum.

Also cĭtum from cieo, cĭtum from cio; stātum from sisto, stātum from sto.

(f) Pro in composition is generally long, as *prōcedo*.

Exceptions. Prōcella, prōnepos, prōpero, prōtervus; and generally where *f* follows, as *prōfisciscor*, *prōfundus*. But *prōfero*, *prōficio*, *prōfui*.

(k) Re in composition is short, as *rēfert* (from *refero*).

Exceptions. Rēfert (the Impersonal), rēligio, rēliquiae, rēperit, rēpult, rētulit. (The last three are often written *repperit*, *reppulit*, *rettulit*.)

§ 186. Final Syllables.

(a) Rule for long final syllables;—

Final A, I, O, U, C,
AS, ES, OS, must lengthened be.

(1) Exceptions to *a* long are *itā*, *quā*, *ejā*, and Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative Cases (except Vocatives of Greek Nouns in *-as*).

(2) Exceptions to *i* long are *nisi*, *quasi*; Greek Vocatives and Datives, as *Alexī*, *Palladī*; and the doubtful vowels *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*. Compounds of *ubi*, except *ubique*, are short, as *ubivis*.

(3) Exceptions to *o* long are *citō*, *egō*, *modō*, *quomodō*, *duō*, *homō*. The *o* of the First Person Singular of Verbs is said to be common, but except in *sciō*, *nesciō*, *volō*, *putō*, it is almost always found long.

(4) Exceptions to *e* long are *fāc*, *nēc*, *donēc*, *hīc* (the Pronoun).

(5) Exceptions to *as* long are *anās*, *vās* (*vādis*), and most Greek Cases of the 3rd Declension in *-as*.

(6) Exceptions to *es* long are *penēs*, *ēs* (from *sum*) and its compounds, and *-es* of the 3rd Declension *increasing short* as *segēs*. But *ariēs*, *abiēs*, *pariēs*, *Cerēs*, *pēs* (and compounds, as, *sonipēs*).

(7) Exceptions to *os* long are *compōs*, *impōs*, *ōs* (*ossis*), and Greek words in *-os*, as *epōs*.

(b) Rule for short final syllables:—

Finals reckoned short are E,
B, D, L, R, N, and T,
IS and US; nor place deny
To words from Greek in YS and Y.

(1) Exceptions to *e* short are the final *e* of 5th Decl., as *diēs*, and Adverbs derived therefrom, as *hodiēs*, *quarē*; 2nd Sing. Imperative of 2nd Conj., as *monē*; Adverbs (except *benē*, *malē*) derived from Adjectives in *-us* and *-er*; Greek Nouns in *-η*.

(2) Exceptions to *i* short are *sāl* and *sōl*.

(3) Exceptions to *r* short are *fār*, *fūr*, *vēr*, *cūr*, *pār*, with its compounds; Greek nouns in *-ηp*.

(4) Exceptions to *n* short are *en*, *nōn*, *quin*, and Greek words in *-ην* or *-ων*.

(5) Exceptions to *is* short are *Dat.* and *Abl. Plural*; *-is* (for *-es*) of *Acc. Pl. 3rd Declension*; Nouns of *3rd Decl. in -is increasing long*, as *Samnis* (*itis*); *2nd Pers. Sing. of Tenses which have 2nd Pers. Pl. in -itis*, as *audis*. The *2nd Sing. Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.* is doubtful, as *amaveris*.

(6) Exceptions to *us* short are all the cases of *4th Decl. except Nom. and Voc. Sing.*; Nouns of *3rd Decl. in -us increasing long*, as *servitūs*; Greek Nouns in *-ους*, *Lat. -us*, as *Panthūs*.

PARSING FORMS.

§ 187. Substantive.

—— is a Substantive, from —— (*state here what it makes in the Genitive*), —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case. Account for the Case, by reference to the explanations given in the Syntax; for example, if the word be in the Genitive Case, state what kind of Genitive it is, and on what word it is dependent.

§ 188. Adjective.

—— is an Adjective of —— Terminations, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case, agreeing with ——.

Note. If it be a Comparative or Superlative Adjective, state the fact, and give the Positive; thus, 'digniori is an Adjective of two Terminations, from dignior, the Comparative of dignus, etc.' If it be a Numeral or Quasi-numeral, state the fact.

§ 189. Personal or Reflexive Pronoun.

—— is a —— Pronoun, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case. Account for the Case, as with Substantives.

§ 190. Adjectival Pronoun.

—— is a —— Pronoun, from ——, —— Gender, —— Number, —— Case, agreeing with ——. If it be a Relative Pronoun, or a Demonstrative used as a Personal Pronoun, account for the Case, as with Substantives.

§ 191. Verb.

—— is a —— Verb, from —— (*here give the chief parts of the Verb*), —— Voice, —— Mood,¹ —— Tense, —— Number, —— Person,² agreeing with its Nominative ——.

If an Infinitive, omit Number, Person, and Agreement.

For an Impersonal Verb, omit Person and Agreement, and after the word 'Number' add the words 'used Impersonally.'

¹ Account for the Mood, if a Subjunctive.

² Or —— Person, —— Number, —— Tense, —— Mood, —— Voice.

§ 192. Participle.

_____ is from _____, the (*here state the Tense and Voice*) Participle of the Verb _____ (*here give the chief parts of the Verb*), _____ Gender, _____ Number, _____ Case, agreeing with _____.

Note. If a Gerundive, omit Tense and Voice. In parsing the forms *amandum est*, *monendum est*, etc., there is no agreement with any Substantive; therefore, after the word 'Case' add the words 'Neuter Gerundive Construction, implying necessity.'

§ 193. Gerund or Supine.

_____ is a Gerund (*or Supine*) in _____, from the Verb _____ (*give chief parts of the Verb*), _____ Case. Account for the Case.

§ 194. Particles.

- (a) _____ is an Adverb. (If Comparative or Superlative Degree, name the Positive). State what word it modifies.
 (b) _____ is a Preposition governing the _____ Case.
 (c) _____ is a _____ Conjunction, connecting _____ and _____.
 (d) _____ is an Interjection.

§ 195. *Example.* Tum senex recitavit iudicibus eam fabulam quam proximè scripserat, *then the old man read out to the judges the play which he had last written.*

Note. This example is parsed in a shortened form to show the abbreviations which may be used.

Tum, Adv. of Time, modifying recitavit.
 senex, Subst. f. senex, senis, Masc. Sing. Nom. being Subj. to recitavit.
 recitavit, Trans. Vb. f. recit-o, -are, -avi, -atum, Act. Ind. Aor. 3rd Sing., agreeing with Nom. senex.
 iudicibus, Subst. f. iudex, iudicis, Masc. Pl. Dat. being Ind. Obj. of recitavit.
 eam, Demonstr. Pron. f. is, ea, id, Fem. Sing. Acc. agr. w. fabulam.
 fabulam, Subst. f. fabula, -ae, Fem. Sing. Act. being Direct Object of recitavit.
 quam, Rel. Pron. f. qui, quae, quod, Fem. Sing. 3rd Pers. agr. w. antecedent fabulam; Acc. Case, being Direct Object of scripserat.
 proximè, Adv. modifying scripserat, Superl. degree from prope, Comp. propius.
 scripserat, Trans. Vb. f. scribo, scribère, scripsi, scriptum, Act. Ind. Plpf. 3rd Sing., agreeing with Pronoun of 3rd Pers. implied in its ending.

SUPPLEMENTARY RULES

AND

EXAMPLES.

§ 196. **Note on the Subjunctive.** The Subjunctive denotes actions which are *thought of as happening*, whereas the Indicative denotes those which *actually do happen*. Hence,

Rule. The Indicative expresses a *fact*, the Subjunctive a *conception*.

§ 197. The uses of the Subjunctive may conveniently be classified according as they occur in Principal Clauses of Oratio Recta, in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Recta, in Principal Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, and in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Obliqua. The use of the Mood in continuous Speeches reported in Oratio Obliqua will also have to be noticed.

§ 198. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES OF ORATIO RECTA.

(a) **Potential Use**, as, *dicat aliquis, Some one may say.*

Note. Nearly all the instances where the Subjunctive in Principal Clauses is translated by the signs, *may, might, can, could, would, should*, are to be explained as Potential. The Hypothetical and Dubitative uses, to be noticed below in (b) and (c) are mere varieties of the Potential.

(b) **Hypothetical Use**, where a Subjunctive forms the apodosis (§ 181) of a Conditional Sentence, as, *fecissem si jussisses, I should have done it, if you had ordered me.*

(c) **Dubitative Use**, found chiefly in questions, as, *quid faciam, what am I to do?*

(d) **Optative Use** (often introduced by *utinam*), as, *moriar, may I die! utinam mortuus essem, would that I had died!*

(e) **Jussive, Hortative, or Imperative Use**, as, *abeat, let him begone; ne dixeris, don't say so.*

§ 199. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF ORATIO RECTA.

Subordinate Clauses are introduced either by the Relative, *qui, quae, quod*, or by Conjunctions. The Mood in such Clauses is *not always Subjunctive*, but when it is, it is usually explained grammatically as being *governed* by the Relative or Conjunction, though the expression is not strictly correct, the real reason for the Mood being that it refers to a *supposed case* rather

than an *actual fact*, e. g. *Paetus omnes libros, quos frater suus reliquisset, mihi donavit, Paetus has given me all the books which his brother left him*, i. e. which his brother, *as he believed*, had left. (For a more complete account of the Relative in its simple sense of *who* or *which* followed by a Subjunctive see Madvig §§ 368, 369.) Of Subordinate Clauses introduced by Conjunctions, the chief kinds are,

(a) **Final** (indicating a *purpose*), expressed in English by *that* or *in order that*, *lest*, and in Latin by *ut, that, nē, lest*, *quo* (before Comparatives), *that*, *qui*=*ut*, and *quominus*, *quin*, *in order that . . . not*.

(b) **Consecutive** (indicating a *result*), expressed in English by *that*, after a preceding *so* or *such*, and in Latin by *ut* after *talis*, *tam*, etc.; also by *quin*, *so that . . . not*, and *qui*=*talis ut*.

(c) **Temporal** (indicating *time*), expressed in English by *when*, etc., and in Latin by *quum*, *ut*, *ubi*, and other Temporal Conjunctions already mentioned in § 84.

(d) **Causal**, expressed in English by *since*, *as*, or *because*, and in Latin by *quum*, *quia*, *quod*, and other Causal Conjunctions mentioned in § 84.

(e) **Conditional**, expressed in English by *if* or *unless*, and in Latin by *si*, *nisi*, and other Conditional Conjunctions mentioned in § 84.

(f) **Concessive**, expressed in English by *although*, and in Latin by *etsi*, *quanquam*, etc. See § 84.

(g) **Comparative**, expressed in English by *as if* or *as though*, and in Latin by *tanquam*, *quasi*, etc. See § 84.

§ 200. IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES OF ORATIO OBLIQUA.

(a) **Oblique Statement.** A simple Statement, as *voluit, he wished*, becomes Oblique when it forms the Object of a Verb, as *dicat se voluisse, he says that he wished*, or the Subject of a Verb, as *constat eum voluisse, it is well known that he wished*, i. e. that he wished (Subject) is well known (Verb). Here the Infinitive is used. But sometimes we find *ut* with Subjunctive, as *accidit ut vellet, it happened that he wished*. Hence

Rule. *The Principal Clauses in Oblique Statement are the Subjects of Impersonal Verbs or the Objects of Verbs of declaring, knowing, perceiving, thinking, or believing, and are usually expressed by the Infinitive, but occasionally by ut with Subjunctive after certain Impersonals, e. g.*

*Restat, abest, accidit,
Evēnit, contingit, fit,
Licet, sequitur, and est,
Placet, refert, interest.*

(b) **Oblique Question.** Questions, as, *ridesnē are you laughing?* *quid rides, what are you laughing at?* become Oblique when they form the Object of a Verb, as, *rideasnē scire volumus, we want to know whether you are laughing*, or the Subject of a Verb, as, *quid rideas dictu difficile est, it is difficult to say what you are laughing at*.

Rule. *All Clauses introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle (§ 60, p. 75) must have their Verb in the Subjunctive if they form the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

Note. This Rule will require some modification when we come to the rule respecting whole Speeches reported in Oratio Obliqua (see § 202).

(c) *Oblique Command.* Properly speaking the only instances of Oblique Command are those which occur in a whole Speech reported in *Oratio Obliqua*, where they are always put in the *Subjunctive*, as will be seen below, § 202. It is convenient however to include under this head Clauses introduced by *ut* or *ne* which follow Verbs expressing such ideas as

To ask or wish, command, contrive,

Allow, forbid, advise, and strive;

as, *imperavi tibi ut hoc faceres, I commanded you to do this; suasi tibi ne hoc faceres, I advised you not to do this.* [See § 301.]

§ 201. IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES OF ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Rule. A Subordinate Clause in *Oratio Obliqua*, whether belonging to an Oblique Statement, Question, or Command, must under all circumstances be put in the *Subjunctive*.

Note. Such sentences as, *nuntiant Belgas, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, in armis esse*, are no exception to this rule. The clause '*qui cis Rhenum incolunt*' formed no part of the speaker's original words, and does not therefore belong to the Oblique Sentence, but is added by the author for the information of his readers.

§ 202. SPEECHES REPORTED IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

A whole Speech containing Statements, Questions, and Commands intermingled is sometimes reported Obliquely, being dependent on the words *dixit, dicit*, or their equivalents expressed or understood.

Rule for Speeches in Oratio Obliqua. The Statements are put in the *Infinitive*; the Questions, if of the First or Third Person, are also in the *Infinitive*, but if of the Second Person they are usually in the *Subjunctive*; the Commands are put in the *Subjunctive*; and, lastly, all Subordinate Clauses must be *Subjunctive*.

Example :—

Direct. Deinde dux, 'Arcem hostium,' exclamavit, 'statim expugnare mihi in animo est. Quis mecum erit, comites? Expectatisne donec hostes ultro arma tradant? Utrum dux an servus vester sum? Expergiscimini, festinate, arma parate, ne occasionem, quam nunc fors obtulit, belli conficiendi amittamus!'

Oblique. Deinde dux exclamavit, Sibi esse in animo arcem hostium statim expugnare. Quem comitum secum fore? Expectarentne donec hostes ultro arma traderent? Utrum ducem eorum an servum sese esse?

Thereupon the general exclaimed, 'I purpose storming the enemy's citadel immediately. Who will go with me, comrades? Are you waiting until the enemy voluntarily give up their arms? Am I your general or your slave? Wake up! Make haste! Get ready your arms, lest we lose the opportunity which chance has now presented of finishing the war!'

Thereupon the general exclaimed that he purposed storming the enemy's citadel immediately. Which of his comrades would go with him? Were they waiting until the enemy voluntarily gave up their arms? Was he their general or their slave?

Expergiscerentur, festinarent,
arma pararent, ne occasionem
quam nunc fors obtulisset,
belli conficiendi amitterent.

*They must wake up, make haste, and
get ready their arms, lest they should
lose the opportunity which chance
had now presented of finishing the
war.*

Note. The Subjunctive Mood is sometimes distinguished as *Conjunctive* when it occurs in Principal Clauses of Oratio Recta, *Subjunctive* when it occurs in Subordinate or Oblique Sentences.

§ 203. The Subjunctive is also used in Causal and Relative Sentences to denote an *alleged* reason or act, as, Laudat Panaetius Africanum, quod fuerit abstinens, 'Panaetius praises Africanus because, *as he says*, he was self-restraining.' Fuit for fuerit would mean 'because he *actually was* self-restraining,' without implying that Panaetius said so. So, injuria quae tibi facta est, 'the injury which *has been done you*,' but injuria quae tibi facta sit, 'the injury which *you say has been done you*,' Cic. in Caecil. 58.

§ 204. Additional Notes on the Sequence of Tenses. The general rule for Sequence of Tenses, as stated in § 148, is that Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, and Historic by Historic.

Note. The Rule here given applies equally to both Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods. Remember that what is called the Present Infinitive, as amare, is both Present and Imperfect, and that what is called the Perfect Infinitive, as amavisse, is both Perfect and Pluperfect. Note the following examples of Infinitive:—

ait se verum dicere, *He says that he is speaking the truth.*

ait se verum dixisse, *He says that he spoke, or has spoken, the truth.*

aiobat se verum dicere, *He said that he spoke, or was speaking, the truth.*

aiobat se verum dixisse, *He said that he had spoken the truth.*

§ 205. The difficulty which most troubles beginners in the rule for Sequence of Tenses is the translation of an English Aorist when requiring to be put into the Subjunctive or Infinitive Mood in Latin. The following rule may be followed in most cases:

After a Primary Tense the Aorist is translated by a Perfect Subjunctive or Infinitive, as,

nescio an verum dixerit, *I know not whether he spoke the truth.*

ait se verum dixisse, *He says that he spoke the truth.*

After a Historic Tense the Aorist is translated by an Imperfect Subjunctive or Infinitive, as,

nesciebam an verum diceret, *I knew not whether he spoke the truth.*

aiobat se verum dicere, *He said that he spoke the truth.*

§ 206. Often however the rule given in § 205 will not apply; e.g.

(a) By a laxity in English usage the Aorist is often used where a Pluperfect ought to stand. Thus, we find such sentences as 'A said that B told him so and so,' where *told* of course means *had told*. In all such cases, where the action takes place *before* that of the governing verb, a Pluperfect must be used after a Historic Tense.

(b) The Latins often preferred to represent Aorist Time by a Perfect Subjunctive rather than an Imperfect after Historic Tenses: this usage, where it occurs, is intended perhaps to mark the occurrence of an *actual*

fact rather than a supposed case. It is especially frequent after *ut* Consecutive; thus, '*he was so prudent that he avoided these things*' might be translated *tam prudens erat ut haec vitaret*, or *tam prudens erat ut haec transiret*; the former would mean '*he was so prudent as to avoid*,' &c., the latter '*he was so prudent that he did actually avoid*.'

(c) A Pluperfect is often used in Subordinate Clauses of *Oratio Obliqua*, where an Imperfect would stand if it were *Oratio Recta*; thus, *si flumen transiret*, *hostem vinceret*, *if he crossed the river he would conquer the enemy*, becomes, in the Oblique form, *putavit se, si flumen transisset, hostem esse victurum*.

§ 207. Cicero constantly uses an Imperfect Subjunctive after a Perfect Indicative. Thus in *1 Verr. i. 3* he says, *huic ego causae actor accessi non ut augerem invidiam ordinis, sed ut infamiae communi succurrerem*, *I have come forward as prosecutor in this case, not to increase the unpopularity of your order but to retrieve the ill-repute we suffer from in common*.

§ 208. After a Historic Present, i.e. a Present used for an Aorist, like our '*says he*' for '*said he*,' the Tenses in Subordinate or Dependent Sentences sometimes follow the *rule*, sometimes the *sense*, as, '*though so great a defeat had been sustained, the general nevertheless exhorts the soldiers not to lose heart*,' *quum tanta clades esset accepta, dux tamen milites hortatur ne animo deficiant* or *deficerent*.

* * The following Examples, as far as § 290, follow the order of the Rules of Syntax, pp. 84-104, which they are intended both to illustrate and supplement. The numbering of the paragraphs is made with a view to facilitating reference, and has nothing to do with the Syntax Rules.

Phrases and words requiring special notice in the Examples are printed in italics without any reference being necessarily intended to the particular rule of Syntax which the example illustrates.

The Three Concords.

(See § 95, *a* and *b*.)

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| § 209. The Gauls are attacking the city. | Galli urbem oppugnant. |
| They announce that the Gauls are attacking the city. | Gallos urbem oppugnare nuntiant. (See § 112.) |
| I know not why the Gauls are attacking the city. | Cur Galli urbem oppugnent nescio. (See § 200, <i>b</i> .) |
| § 210. What sort of man is Milo? | Qualis est Milo? |
| I know not what sort of man Milo is. | Nescio qualis sit Milo. |

I *know not* what sort of man Milo *was*.

I *knew not* what sort of man Milo *was*.

§ 211. He is happy.

He says that he is happy.

She says that she is happy.

He *says that he is not* happy.

They say that he *was* happy.

They *said that he was not* happy.

Brutus pretended to be mad.

§ 212. Caesar will come.

It is well known that Caesar will come.

They said that Caesar would come.

Caesar hopes to come.

Caesar promised to come.

§ 213. Is he wise or foolish?

We wish to know whether he is wise or foolish.

We *wish* to know whether he *was* wise or foolish.

We *wished* to know whether he *was* wise or foolish.

§ 214. Marcus has returned.

Marcus *has been* persuaded [or, *is* persuaded, § 376] to return.

Marcus *was* persuaded to return.

Marcus was persuaded *not* to return.

§ 215. The soldiers had taken the town.

We asked whether the soldiers had taken the town.

§ 216. Part load the tables with food.

Part seek the seeds of flame.

Nescio qualis *fu*erit Milo. (See § 205.)

Nescivi qualis *es*set Milo. (See § 205.)

Beatus est.

Ait se beatum esse.

Ait se beatam esse.

Negat se beatum esse.

Aiunt eum beatum *fuisse*.

Negârunt eum beatum *esse* (or *fuisse* by § 206 a).

Brutus *se* furere simulabat.

Caesar veniet.

Caesarem venturum esse constat.

Caesarem venturum esse dicebant.

Caesar *se* venturum esse sperat.

Caesar *se* venturum (§ 382) pollicitus est.

Utrum sapiens an stultus est?

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus sit.

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus *fu*erit (§ 205).

Scire volumus utrum sapiens an stultus *es*set (§ 205).

Marcus rediit.

Marco persuasum est ut *redeat* (§§ 200, c, and 205).

Marco persuasum est ut *re*diret (§§ 200, c, and 205).

Marco persuasum est *ne* rediret.

Milites oppidum ceperant.

Militesne oppidum cepissent quaesivimus.

Pars epulis onerant mensas.

Quaerit pars semina flammae.

Rule. A Noun of Multitude in the Singular Number may have either a Singular or (by *constructio ad sensum*, § 183) a Plural Verb.

§ 217. Caesar and Crassus will soon be at the gates.

They informed me that Caesar and Crassus would soon be at the gates.

Caesar et Crassus mox ad portas erunt.

Me certiores fecerunt Caesarem et Crassum mox ad portas futuros esse.

Rule. When the Subject is Composite, that is, formed of two or more Nouns united by Conjunctions, the Verb is usually Plural, as above. But,

Note 1. If the Composite Subject denote a *Singular idea*, it takes a Singular Verb, as, *senatus populusque Romanus hoc decrevit.*

Note 2. If the Conjunctions be Disjunctive, as, *nec—nec, utrum—an, sive—sive, vel—vel, aut—aut*, etc., the Verb usually follows the Number and Person of the *nearest Noun*, as, *nec Caesar nec legati hoc fecerunt; nec legati nec vos hoc fecistis.*

§ 218. Both *you and I* were happy.

They say that both you and I were happy.

You and Marcus will be accused. We believe that you and Marcus will be accused.

Et ego et tu beati fuimus.

Et me et te beatos fuisse ferunt.

Tu et Marcus accusabimini.

Te et Marcum accusatum iri credimus.

Rule. If the *Persons* in a Composite Subject are different, the Verb follows the *prior Person*; the First Person being considered prior to the Second, and the Second to the Third.

Note. There is often a tendency, however, to make the Verb agree with the Noun *nearest* to it, as, *ego et Cicero meus flagitabit.* In such cases the Verb is said to be *attracted* to the Person of the nearest Noun.

§ 219. The king and queen are dead.

Fire, water, and iron are very useful.

Rex et regina mortui sunt.

Ignis, aqua, ferrum sunt utilis-sima.

Rule. If the *Genders* in a Composite Subject are different, the rules for Adjective in Agreement are as follows:—

(1) If the Nouns are names of *living things*, the Adjective is put in the Plural and follows the *worthier Gender*; the Masculine being considered *worthier* than the Feminine, and the Feminine *worthier* than the Neuter.

(2) If the Nouns are names of *things not living*, the Adjective is put in the Neuter Plural.

Note. Here again, however, is to be noticed the tendency to *attract* the Adjective into agreement with the *nearest Noun*, as, *animus et consilium et sententia civitatis posita est in legibus, the spirit and purpose and feeling of a nation is expressed in its laws.*

§ 220. The chiefs of the conspiracy were whipped and beheaded.

Capita conjunctionis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt.

Note. A *constructio ad sensum* (§ 183), *caesi* and *percussi* agreeing with the notion of *men* implied in *capita*.

§ 221. The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love. Amantium irae amoris integratio est.

Note. Est is here *attracted* to the Number of the nearest Noun. Cf. 'Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath gives.' Macbeth, act ii. sc. 1. (See § 95, c.)

§ 222. They cut down the tree which grew in our garden. Arborem, quae in horto nostro crescebat, succiderunt.
The tree which I loved so much has been cut down. Arbor, quam tantopere diligebam, succisa est.
The army which Hannibal brought with him was small. Exercitus, quem Hannibal secum duxit, exiguus erat.

Rule. The Preposition cum, when used with the Personal Pronouns, and sometimes when used with the Relative, is enclitic (§ 179), as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum, quibuscum.

It is said that Scipio commanded the army which overcame Hannibal. Exercitui, qui Hannibalem superavit, Scipio praefuisse dicitur (§ 231).

We, who are in the country, send these presents to you, who are in the city. Nos, qui ruri sumus, haec munera ad vos, qui in urbe estis, mittimus.

You and I, who have so long been enemies, have at length laid aside our enmity. Ego et tu, qui tamdiu inimici fuimus, inimicitias tandem deposuimus.

§ 223. I will punish him who does this. Qui hoc fecerit, in eum animadvertam (§ 298).

Rule. Avoid ille qui. When *is* is antecedent to qui, it is often either omitted altogether, or placed in the *following* clause, as above.

§ 224. Here am I who did it. Adsum qui feci.
Here am I whom ye seek. Adsum quem quaeritis.

In these examples the antecedent ego is contained in the Verb adsum.

§ 225. All men praised my good fortune in having such a son. Omnes laudare fortunas meas qui talem natum haberem.

Here the Antecedent is contained in the Possessive Pronoun meas, which = *mei, of me*. For the Historic Infinitive laudare see § 276, and for the Subjunctive, haberem, see § 282.

§ 226. I came in time, which is the most important of all things. In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.

Here the Antecedent is the sentence 'in tempore veni.'

§ 227. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia. Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est.

The Relative here is *attracted* into agreement in Number and Gender with the Appositional Noun in its clause. Sometimes, though rarely,

the Relative is attracted into the Case of its Antecedent, in imitation of the Greek, as, *judice, quo nōsti, populo, and, rebus, quibus quisque poterat, elatis. Inverse Attraction*, confined chiefly to poetry, is where the Antecedent is attracted into the Case of the Relative, as, *urbem, quam statuo, vestra est, the city which I am founding is yours.*

§ 228. A boy whose name was Puer cui Servio Tullio nomen
Servius Tullius. fuit.

Here Servio Tullio, which should be Nominative in Apposition to nomen, is attracted into the Case of cui.

§ 229. Osiris was the first who Osiris primus aratra fecit.
made ploughs.

It is uncertain whether Osiris Osirisnē an Triptōlēmus primus
or Triptolemus was the first aratra fecerit incertum est.
who made ploughs.

He gave me the most beautiful Flores, quos habuit pulcherri-
flowers he had. mos, mihi dedit.

Lucullus was the richest person Eorum qui tum Romae habita-
who was then living at Rome. bant Lucullus ditissimus erat.

Note. Neither Ordinal Numerals nor Superlatives contain the Antecedent to the Relative in Latin, as they appear to do in English. 'Osiris primus erat qui aratra fecit' would mean, *Osiris, who made ploughs, was the first man*, without denoting in what respect he was 'first,' and by no means implying that it was in the making of ploughs. After Superlatives, some rendering similar to that given in the last two of the above examples must be adopted. 'Flores pulcherrimos, quos habuit' would simply mean, *very beautiful flowers, which he had*; and 'Lucullus ditissimus erat qui tum Romae habitabat' would mean, *Lucullus, who was then living at Rome, was a very rich person.* (For 'he sent back *all* the books he had' say 'libros, quos habuit, remisit omnes,' rather than 'omnes libros, quos habuit, remisit.')

Copulative Verbs and Apposition.

(See §§ 96-100.)

§ 230. Hector was son of Priam, Priāmi, regis Trojāni, Hector
the Trojan king. filius fuit.

The poets say that Hector Priāmi, regis Trojani, Hectō-
was son of Priam, the Trojan rem filium fuisse tradunt
king. poetae.

§ 231. It is said that Galba was Galba doctus fuisse dicitur.
learned.

It has been related that Galba Galbam doctum fuisse traditum
was learned. est.

Note. Do not say *Galbam doctum fuisse dicitur*. The Copulative Verbs (§ 96) prefer a Personal to an Impersonal construction, except in the Tenses compounded with the Perfect Participle. See Madvig, § 400.

- § 221. The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love. *Amantium irae amoris integratio est.*

Note. Est is here *attracted* to the Number of the nearest Noun. Cf. 'Words to the heat of deeds too cold breath gives.' Macbeth, act ii. sc. i. (See § 95, c.)

- § 222. They cut down the tree which grew in our garden. *Arborem, quae in horto nostro crescebat, succiderunt.*
 The tree which I loved so much has been cut down. *Arbor, quam tantopere diligebam, succisa est.*
 The army which Hannibal brought with him was small. *Exercitus, quem Hannibal secum duxit, exiguus erat.*

Rule. The Preposition cum, when used with the Personal Pronouns, and sometimes when used with the Relative, is enclitic (§ 179), as, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quocum, quibuscum.

- It is said that Scipio commanded the army which overcame Hannibal. *Exercitui, qui Hannibalem superavit, Scipio praeuisse dicitur (§ 231).*
 We, who are in the country, send these presents to you, who are in the city. *Nos, qui ruri sumus, haec munera ad vos, qui in urbe estis, mittimus.*
You and I, who have so long been enemies, have at length laid aside our enmity. *Ego et tu, qui tamdiu inimici fuimus, inimicitias tandem deposuimus.*

- § 223. I will punish him who does this. *Qui hoc fecerit, in eum animadvertam (§ 298).*

Rule. Avoid ille qui. When *is* is antecedent to *qui*, it is often either omitted altogether, or placed in the *following* clause, as above.

- § 224. Here am I who did it. *Adsum qui feci.*
 Here am I whom ye seek. *Adsum quem quaeritis.*

In these examples the antecedent *ego* is contained in the Verb *adsum*.

- § 225. All men praised my good fortune in having such a son. *Omnes laudare fortunas meas qui talem natum haberem.*

Here the Antecedent is contained in the Possessive Pronoun *meas*, which = *mei, of me*. For the Historic Infinitive *laudare* see § 276, and for the Subjunctive, *haberem*, see § 282.

- § 226. I came in time, which is the most important of all things. *In tempore veni, quod rerum omnium est primum.*

Here the Antecedent is the sentence 'in tempore veni.'

- § 227. Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia. *Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est.*

The Relative here is *attracted* into agreement in Number and Gender with the Appositional Noun in its clause. Sometimes, though rarely,

the Relative is attracted into the Case of its Antecedent, in imitation of the Greek, as, *judice, quo nōsti, populo, and, rebus, quibus quisque poterat, elatis. Inverse Attraction*, confined chiefly to poetry, is where the Antecedent is attracted into the Case of the Relative, as, *urbem, quam statuo, vestra est, the city which I am founding is yours.*

§ 228. A boy whose name was Puer cui Servio Tullio nomen
Servius Tullius. fuit.

Here Servio Tullio, which should be Nominative in Apposition to nomen, is attracted into the Case of cui.

§ 229. Osiris was the first who Osiris primus aratra fecit.
made ploughs.

It is uncertain whether Osiris Osirisnē an Triptōlēmus primus
or Triptolemus was the first aratra fecerit incertum est.
who made ploughs.

He gave me the most beautiful Flores, quos habuit pulcherri-
flowers he had. mos, mihi dedit.

Lucullus was the richest person Eorum qui tum Romae habita-
who was then living at Rome. bant Lucullus ditissimus erat.

Note. Neither Ordinal Numerals nor Superlatives contain the Antecedent to the Relative in Latin, as they appear to do in English. 'Osiris primus erat qui aratra fecit' would mean, *Osiris, who made ploughs, was the first man*, without denoting in what respect he was 'first,' and by no means implying that it was in the making of ploughs. After Superlatives, some rendering similar to that given in the last two of the above examples must be adopted. 'Flores pulcherrimos, quos habuit' would simply mean, *very beautiful flowers, which he had*; and 'Lucullus ditissimus erat qui tum Romae habitabat' would mean, *Lucullus, who was then living at Rome, was a very rich person.* (For 'he sent back all the books he had' say 'libros, quos habuit, remisit omnes,' rather than 'omnes libros, quos habuit, remisit.')

Copulative Verbs and Apposition.

(See §§ 96-100.)

§ 230. Hector was son of Priam, Priāmi, regis Trojāni, Hector
the Trojan king. filius fuit.

The poets say that Hector Priāmi, regis Trojani, Hectō-
was son of Priam, the Trojan rem filium fuisse tradunt
king. poetae.

§ 231. It is said that Galba was Galba doctus fuisse dicitur.
learned.

It has been related that Galba Galbam doctum fuisse traditum
was learned. est.

Note. Do not say *Galbam doctum fuisse dicitur.* The Copulative Verbs (§ 96) prefer a Personal to an Impersonal construction, except in the Tenses compounded with the Perfect Participle. See Madvig, § 400.

§ 232. The town was called Corioli.
They called the town Corioli.
He marched towards Capua, a city which had lately revolted.

Oppidum Coriōli vocatum est (or vocati sunt, *by attraction*),
Oppidum Coriōlos vocāunt.
Ad Capuam flexit iter, quae urbs (*not urbem quae*) nuper defecerat.

Rule. An Appositive Noun having a Relative Clause immediately dependent on it, as in the last of the above examples, is sometimes *attracted* into the Case of the Relative. So, the phrase 'a thing which' is always quae res, quam rem, etc.

§ 233. I wish to be made consul.
It is a glorious thing to be made consul.

Consul fieri cupio (*rarely, me consulem fieri cupio*).
Consulem fieri magnificum est.

Note. In the last example consulem, being a mere complement of fieri, follows the case of the unexpressed Subject of that Verb, viz. the Accusative (§ 89, footnote 2).

§ 234. I am not permitted to be neglectful. Mihi non licet esse negligenti.

Note. Mihi non licet esse negligentem is also correct Latin, negligentem agreeing with 'me' understood. If no Dative after licet is expressed, the Accusative is generally used, as, medios esse non licebit. Madvig. 393, c. Obs. 3.

Time, Place, and Measure.

(See §§ 101-107.)

§ 235. Priam reigned many years.
He is twenty years old.

Priāmus multos annos regnavit.
Viginti annos natus est.

§ 236. Caesar was killed on the Ides of March in the year 44 before Christ.

Caesar Idibus Martiis, anno ante Christum natum quadragésimo quarto, interfectus est.

Note 1. This Ablative is used to express (1) *at what time*, as above, (2) *within what time*, as, paucis diebus proficiscar, *I shall set out in a few days*, (3) *how long ago, before, or after*, as, abhinc tribus annis, *three years ago*, multis ante (or post) annis, *many years before (or after)*.

Note 2. To find the Roman way of expressing the above date, subtract 44 from 753, the supposed date of the founding of Rome, and write, anno urbis conditae septingentesimo nono, *in the 709th year of the founding of the city*.

Note 3. For the use of Prepositions in defining time, see notes on de, ex, in, sub, &c., §§ 318-363.

§ 237. Having sailed thence to Greece I returned to my home in Italy in twenty days.

Inde ad Graeciam advectus viginti diebus domum meam in Italian redii.

Note. Ad with the Accusative of towns and small islands means *towards, in the direction of*, as, ad Brundisium flexit iter.

§ 238. Dionysius *when* expelled
from Syracuse taught boys at
Corinth in Greece.

The ambassadors returned from
Carthage in Africa.

Dionysius Syracusis expulsus
pueros in Graecia Corinthi
docuit.

Legati Carthagine ex Africā
redierunt.

Note. Ab or ex with towns or small islands denotes either *from the interior of* or *from the neighbourhood of*, as, ex Cypro discessit; Caesar a Gergovia discessit. Ab is used with expressions of *measure*, as, tria millia passuum a Roma abesse.

§ 239. *When* at Rome I love
Tibur, *when* at Tibur Rome.

Horatius said that when at Rome
he loved Tiber, when at Tibur
Rome.

Romae Tibur, Tibure Romam
amo.

Horatius dixit se Romae Tibur,
Tibure Romam amare.

Accusative Case.

(See § 110, a, b.)

§ 240. To play an insolent game. Ludum insolentem ludere.

Note. Pure Cognate Accusatives as ludere ludum, ridere risum, etc., are rare. It is more common to find an Accusative added to Intransitive Verbs to denote some *special part* of the whole action of the Verb, as, ludere aleam, *to play hazard*, i.e. ludere ludum aleae. So, pluere sanguinem, *to rain blood*; lampadem olere, *to smell of the lamp*; mella sapere, *to have the taste of honey*, etc.

§ 241. The Suevi do not subsist
much upon corn, but chiefly
upon milk and cattle.

Suevi non multum frumento
sed maximam partem lacte
atque pecore vivunt.

Note. The Accusative of Limitation, as, maximam partem in the above example, is allied to the Cognate usage. It is immaterial whether we call multum here an Accusative of Limitation or a Neuter Adjective used Adverbially.

(See § 110, c.)

§ 242. Like unto a God in
countenance and shoulders.

Os humerosque deo similis.

§ 243. Having his temples
crowned with bay.

Redimitus tempora lauro.

Note. The Accusatives here and in similar instances, many of which occur in Virgil, as perque pedes trajectus lora tumentes, *having thongs passed through his swelling feet*, inutile ferrum cingitur, *he girds on his useless sword*, etc., are not Accusatives of Respect, but are the Direct Object of the Verb or Participle, which is to be regarded either as retaining its Transitive force in the Passive Voice, or as being Reflexive.

(See § 114.)

§ 244. Ask favour of the gods. Posce deos veniam.

Note. The Verbs of *asking* that take a double Accusative are posco, flagito, oro, rogo, interrogo. Peto, precor, postūlo, quaero, sciscitor, prefer an Ablative of the *person* with *ab* or *ex*.

§ 245. My mother taught me my letters. Mater mea me literas docuit.

I remember that my mother taught me my letters. Matrem meam me literas docēre memīni.

Note. The construction of *memini* with Present instead of Perfect Infinitive is to be noticed.

§ 246. Do not conceal these things from your father. Haec nē patrem tuum celaveris.

Or, haec patrem tuum celare noli. But do not, in writing Prose, put *nē* celes, or *nē* cela. See § 378.

Dative Case.

(See §§ 116 and 117, a.)

§ 247. He owed his life to me. Vitam mihi acceptam rētulit.
They appoint a day for the trial of Titus Menenius. T. Menenio diem dicunt.

To be angry *with* any one. Irasci (*or succensere*) alicui.
If you consult *me* I will consult Si me consulueris, ego tibi consulam (§ 298).
What have I to do with you? Quid mihi tecum?
A shout ascends to heaven. It clamor caelo.

Note. Caelo is Dative of *motion to*, for *ad caelum*; a poetical usage.

§ 248. This is common to me and you. Hoc mihi tecum commune est.

This is common to all living creatures. Commune animantium omnium hoc est.

That was peculiar to Tiberius. Id Tiberio proprium fuit.
This is a vice peculiar to old age. Hoc proprium senectutis vitium est.

He is like his father. Patri suo similis est.
Do you think you are like me? An tu mei similem esse putas?

Rule. Communis, proprius, and similis may take either a Dative or a Genitive. So also affinis, *connected with*, alienus, *unsuitable*, par, *equal*, sacer, *consecrated to*, superstes, *surviving*.

(See § 117, c.)

§ 249. I have a brother. Est mihi frater.

Note. The Dative after *sum*, rendered in English by the Verb *to have*, is a Dative of the Possessor.

(See § 117, d.)

- § 250. He took the young man *Extractum custodiæ juvenem*
from confinement and set him *ducem populo imposuit.* [See
 as leader over the people. § 315, b.]

Note on custodiæ. The Verbs denoting *separation* or *difference* which take a Dative (translated by *from*), where we should have expected an Ablative of Separation, or Ablative with Preposition, are mostly those compounded with *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *dis*-, and *ex*, as, *aufero*, *adimo*, *detraho*, *dissero*, *dissentio*, *disto*, *eximo*. The poets extend the usage to other Verbs, as, *huic atro liquuntur sanguine guttæ*, *from it there flow drops of black blood.*

(See § 117, f, g.)

- § 251. To be able to pay one's *Solvendo esse.*
 debts.
 To be able to bear the burden. *Onëri ferendo esse.*
 To sound a retreat. *Receptui canëre.*
 § 252. These things are a sub- *Hæc curæ sunt nobis.*
 ject of anxiety to us.
 He is sent to the assistance of *Exercitui auxilio mittitur.*
 the army.

Note. The Predicative Dative may take a Dative of the Indirect Object after it, as *nobis* and *exercitui* in the above examples. This is sometimes called the Double Dative Construction.

- § 253. Whom did it benefit? *Cui bono fuit?*

Note. With the exception of *bonus*, only Adjectives of *quantity*, as *magnus*, *quantus*, *tantus*, etc., are used with the Predicative Dative. Hence *cui* in the above example is an Indirect Object, not an Adjective in agreement with *bono*.

- § 254. Cassandra the prophetess *Cassandrae vati nunquam cre-*
 was never believed. *dîtum est (§ 119).*
 It is well known that Cassandra *Cassandrae vati nunquam cre-*
 the prophetess was never be- *ditum esse constat.*
 lieved.

Ablative Case.

(See §§ 120, 121.)

- § 255. He joined battle with *Proelium cum hostibus loco*
 the enemy in a favourable *opportuno commisit.*
 position.

Note. Except in the case of towns and small islands, almost the only Ablatives of *Place where* used in Prose are *loco*, *locis*, *dextrâ*, *laevâ*, *medio*, *terrâ* *marique*, and Nouns in the Ablative having *totus* or *medius* in agreement (Roby's Lat. Gr. § 1170). Hence the English *in* when used of *place* should usually be expressed in Latin by the Preposition *in* with Ablative. In Poetry this Ablative is very frequent with all sorts of Nouns.

§ 256. Sulla resigned the dictatorshipship.

Rich in lands, rich in money put out at interest.

Sprung from noble blood.

Sullā dictaturā se abdicavit.
(See § 121, a.)

Dives agris, dives positus in faenore nummis (§ 121, f).

Nobili sanguine ortus.

Note. Creatus, cretus, editus, genitus, natus, oriundus, and satus, all meaning *born of* or *descended from*, usually take a simple Ablative of Origin (§ 121, b), though a Preposition is occasionally found.

§ 257. Caesar was more fortunate than Crassus.

I think death easier than disgrace.

They live more on corn than on meat.

Caesar felicior Crasso erat.
(See § 121, c.)

Puto mortem dedecore leviores.

Frumento magis quam carne vivunt (§ 121, b).

Rule. The Ablative of Comparison is used (1) for *quam* with Nominative, as *felicior Crasso* for *felicior quam Crassus*, (2) for *quam* with Accusative, as *dedecore leviores*, for *leviorem quam dedecus*, *but not for quam with any other Case*. Thus we could not say '*frumento magis carne vivunt*' for *they live more on corn than on meat*.

§ 258. You will be of as much value to others as you *are* to yourself.

Tanti eris aliis quanti tibi fuëris (§ 298).

Note. The forms usually called Genitives of Value are *tanti*, *quanti*, *magni*, *parvi* (with their Comparative Degrees and Compounds, as *maximi*, *quantumque*, &c.), *nihili*, *flocci*, *nauci*, *pili*, *terunci*, *assis*, *hujus*, *pluris*, *minoris*. Mr. Roby (Lat. Gr. §§ 1186, 1187) calls them Locatives, and thinks the forms *assis*, *pluris*, &c., are due to false analogy. The phrase *boni consulere*, to *make the best of*, belongs probably to this usage.

§ 259. Why should I not exchange toil for rest?

Cur non laborem otio permutem? (§ 121, d).

Rule. Mutare and its compounds signify (1) to give in exchange, (2) to take in exchange. The thing given or taken is in the Accusative, and the thing for which it is exchanged is in the Ablative. Hence the above example *might* mean, 'Why should I not take toil in exchange for rest?' i. e. change rest for toil. The meaning to be assigned in any particular passage can only be determined by the context.

§ 260. The richer he is, the more covetous he becomes.

The more he studies the more he learns.

He says that the more *he* studies the more he learns.

Quo divitior eo cupidior fit.
(See § 121, g, and also § 373.)

Quo magis literis studet, eo plus discit.

Ait se, quo magis literis studeat, eo plus discere.

They say that the more *he*. Ferunt eum, quo magis literis
studied the more he learnt. studeret, eo plus didicisse.

Note 1. The quo Clause is subordinate to the eo Clause, and its Verb therefore takes its time from the Aorist didicisse. Studuisset for studeret would not be inadmissible (§ 206, c). For se and eum see § 291.

Note 2. Magis, *more in degree*; plus, *more in quantity*.

§ 261. The sun is many times Sol multis partibus major est
greater than the earth. quam terra (§ 121, g).
The city was *the* more easily Eo facilius capta est urbs, quod,
taken because, &c. &c.
Half as big again. Dimidio major.

(See § 123.)

§ 262. *Having taken the city* Urbe captā, Caesar ex Galliā
Caesar departed from Gaul. discessit.
Christ was born *when Augustus* Imperante Augusto natus est
was Emperor. Christus.
I did this *because my father* Haec, patre et matre iubenti-
and mother ordered me. bus, feci.
If you appease the gods, you will Dis placatis, pericūlum vitabis.
escape the danger.
He left home and set out for Domo relictā in Italiam pro-
Italy. fectus est.
In the consulship of Gnaeus Gn. Pompeio M. Crasso con-
Pompeius, and Marcus Crassus. sulibus.

Notice the above varieties in the translation of the Ablative Absolute. The word Absolute means independent, and the name is given to this construction because it is independent of the rest of the Sentence. It should be rendered by a Clause or Phrase, as shown above: a literal translation usually makes rather poor English.

(See § 126.)

§ 263. Now is there need of Nunc animis opus, Aenea, nunc
courage, O Aeneas; now is viribus usus.
there demand for strength.
Aeneas perceived that now there Nunc animis opus esse nunc
was need of courage, now a viribus usum sensit Aeneas.
demand for strength.
There is need of haste. Properato opus est.
'Why is there need of haste?' 'Cur,' inquit, 'properato opus
said he. est?'

Rule. Opus, *need*, is used (1) with Ablative of a Substantive, as animis, (2) with a Perf. Pass. Part. used Substantively, as properato, (3) in Apposition to a noun in the Nominative, as dux nobis opus est, *we have need of a leader*, (4) with an Infinitive Clause, as, non opus est id scire or id sciri, *it is not needful to know that, or that that should be known*. Usus is constructed similarly, but is less often found.

Genitive Case.

(See §§ 127-131.)

§ 264. My care for you. Mea cura tui.
Your care for me. Tua cura mei.

Rule. Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostrum (Gen. Pl.), and vestrum (Gen. Pl.) are used Subjectively; mei, tui, sui, nostri (Gen. Pl.), and vestri (Gen. Pl.) Objectively. The Genitives nostrum and vestrum are only used after Partitive words, as *uterque nostrum*, *each of us*.

§ 265. He was eager for praise. Avidus erat laudis.
Greedy of other men's wealth, Alieni appetens, sui profusus.
lavish of his own.

Rich in horses, rich in embroidered Dives equum, dives pictai vestis
dered raiment and gold. et auri.

Note 1. Equum for equorum; pictai, old Latin for pictae.

Note 2. The Adjectives that take an Objective Genitive, are (1) those denoting some active state of the feelings or mind, as *avidus*, *cupidus*, *memor*, *peritus*, &c., (2) Verbals in -ax, as *Tempus edax rerum*, (3) Adjectives denoting *fulness* or *want*, as *dives*, *plenus*, *expers*, *pauper*. The last two usages belong chiefly to poetry.

§ 266. The kingly government Regium imperium conservandae
was designed for the preser- libertatis fuit.
vation of liberty.

This rare form may perhaps be a Genitive of Definition. Madvig (417, obs. 4) calls it a Genitive of Purpose.

§ 267. Where in the world? Ubi gentium?
He arrived at such a pitch of Eo stultitiae venit, ut &c.
folly that, &c.

Note 1. Genitives dependent on Adverbs of Place, as *quo*, *eo*, *ubi*, &c., or of time, as *nunc*, *tunc*, &c., are best referred to the head of Partition.

Note 2. Partitive Adjectives commonly take the Gender of their dependent Genitive, as, *una mulierum*, *one of the women* (*una ex mulieribus* would also be good Latin), unless they are in apposition to some previous Noun, as, *Indus*, *omnium fluminum maximus*, *the Indus*, *greatest of all rivers*.

§ 268. Desist from wrath. Abstineto irarum.

So, *desine querelarum*, and *laborum decipitur*, occurring in Horace. These are mere Graecisms, and must not be imitated in prose.

The Impersonal Verbs.

(See §§ 132, 133.)

§ 269. I ought to set out. Me proficisci oportet.
I ought to have set out. Me proficisci oportuit.
'Do you think,' replied the 'Putasnē,' inquit imperator,
general, 'that I ought to have 'me hoc facere oportuisse?'
done this?'

- § 270. I pity your folly. Me stultitiæ tuæ miseret.
 You repent of your faults. Te culparum paenitet.
 He was ashamed of his poverty. Paupertatis eum pudebat.
 We are ashamed to do this. Nos hoc facere pudet.
 They repent of having done this. Eos hoc fecisse paenitet.
 How happens it that no one Quis sit ut nemo contentus sorte
 lives contented with his lot? vivat?
- § 271. It is your interest that Tuā interest pacem, illius bel-
 there should be peace; it is lum esse, (or ut pax, ut bellum
 his that there should be war. sit).

Note. Meā, tuā, &c., are explained (1) as remains of an Acc. Fem. Sing., the original expression being inter meam rem est, tuam rem fert, &c., (2) as Abl. Fem. Sing. with ellipse of re. See also Roby's Lat. Gr. § 1285.

- § 272. This is of little consequence to Caesar. Hoc Caesaris parvi refert.
 This is of great consequence to me. Hoc meā magni refert.

Note. The Genitive (or Locative) of Value, as magni, parvi, &c., (§ 120, b, note 2), is often found with interest and refert.

Infinitive Mood.

- § 273. I wish to go away. Abire cupio.
Note. The Infinitive added to complete the sense after such Verbs as wish, begin, be able, &c. (Madvig, § 389), may be called the *Complementary Infinitive*. It is also known as *Prolative* (Pub. Sch. Lat. Gr. § 180).
- § 274. Bold to endure all things. Audax omnia perpeti.

Note. Perpeti is a poetical application of the Complementary Infinitive.

- § 275. I am glad that you are well. Gaudeo te valere, or gaudeo quod vales.

Note. Quod with Indicative is used instead of Accusative and Infinitive (1) with Verbs expressing some emotion of the mind, as gaudeo, doleo, &c., (2) with certain Impersonals. See Madvig, § 398, b.

- § 276. Then the plebeians began to look round about on the faces of the patricians. Circumspectare tum patriciorum vultus plebei.

Note. The *Historic Infinitive* is used (1) of sudden events, (2) of simultaneous events, (3) of events following in rapid succession.

- § 277. What! am I to shrink from my settled purpose? Me-nē incepto desistere!

Note. The *Exclamatory Infinitive* is used both in Prose and Poetry, with or without -nē, to denote surprise or indignation. Compare the use of the English Infinitive in such phrases as 'to think of your doing this,' &c.

Gerund and Gerundive.

(See §§ 138-142.)

§ 278. I am desirous of satisfying the people. Cupīdus sum satisfaciendi populo.

Rule. The Gerund of a Verb governing the Genitive, Dative, or Ablative takes its case after it.

§ 279. For the sake of seeing something. Aliquid videndi causā (*not* aliquid videndi causā).

For the sake of seeing the city. Urbem videndi causā, *or* urbis videndae causā.

With a view to protecting the city. Ad urbem tuendam (*never* ad urbem tuendum).

Rule. With Transitive Verbs (*a*) the Genitive Gerund often takes an Object in the Accusative, especially when ambiguity, (as noticed in § 138, *footnote*), or awkwardness of sound, as *magnarum statuarum videndarum*, is to be avoided, (*b*) the Dative and Ablative less frequently have an Object, and (*c*) neither Accusative nor Ablative with Preposition *per* has one. In these latter cases the Gerundive construction, as explained in § 138, is used.

§ 280. We must speak. Dicendum est nobis.
We had to speak. Dicendum erat nobis.
We must speak these things. Haec nobis dicenda sunt, (*not* haec nobis dicendum est).

Note. Lucretius has 'Aeternas quoniam poenas in morte timendum est,' but among the classical writers such a phrase is not found (§ 141).

§ 281. He gave up Eumenes to his relatives to be buried. Eumēnem propinquis sepeliendum tradidit.

He caused a bridge to be made over the Arar. Pontem in Arāre faciendum curavit.

Qui, Quum, and Ut.

(See § 143.)

*** For instances of the simple use of Qui see §§ 222-229.

§ 282. I pity you for having made this man your enemy. Miseret tui me, qui hunc hominem inimicum feceris.

The Relative thus used is known as 'Qui Causal.' It is often strengthened by the use of utpote or quippe.

§ 283. He will send ambassadors to beg for peace. Legatos, qui pacem petant, mittet.

He sent ambassadors to beg for peace. Legatos qui pacem petērent, misit.

The Relative thus used is equivalent to a clause introduced by ut, *in order that*, and is known as 'Qui Final.'

§ 284. You are not such a man Non tu is es qui, quid sis,
as not to know what you are. nescias.

The Relative thus used is equivalent to a Clause introduced by *ut* after *talīs*, &c., and is known as 'Qui Consecutive.' It is found (1) after *talīs*, *tantus*, and all other words implying *such*, (2) after *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, &c., as, *dignus est qui imperet*, *he is worthy to rule*, (3) after Comparatives with *quam*, as, *aetate provector est quam qui diu vivat*, *he is too old to live long*, (4) after Interrogative, Indefinite and other Pronouns and Adjectives, as, *quis*, *quidam*, *nemo*, *multi*, &c., either expressed, as, *quis est qui te timeat*, *who is there who fears you?* or understood, as, *sunt qui credant*, *there are some who believe*. Almost all the uses of *quin* in Subordinate clauses are to be referred to this head.

§ 285. There is no one <i>but</i> can do this.	Nemo est quin hoc facere possit.
Who is there <i>that</i> does not see?	Quis est quin videret?
Nothing is so difficult <i>that</i> it cannot be accomplished.	Nihil tam difficile est quin perfici possit.
It cannot be <i>that</i> the soul is not immortal.	Fieri non potest quin animus immortalis sit.
There is no doubt <i>that</i> the case is so.	Non dubium est quin res ita se habeat.
Nothing prevents our doing this.	Nihil obstat quin (or quominus) hoc faciamus.

Note 1. *Quin* stands (1) for the Nominative, *qui non*, *quae non*, *quod non*, as in the first three of the above examples, (2) for the Ablative *quā non*, *how not* or *in such a manner as not*, as in the last three examples.

Note 2. *Quin* in Principal clauses means *why not?* as, *quin expergiscimini*, *why don't you wake up?* and sometimes *but*, *in truth*, *moreover*.

Note 3. *Quominus*, *that . . . not*, only occurs after verbs of *hindering*.

(See § 144.)

§ 286. Such being the case, I wish to consult you.	Quae quum ita sint, te consulere volo.
Such being the case, I wished to consult your interests.	Quae quum ita essent, tibi consulere volui.
§ 287. When summer returns we will go home.	Quum redierit aestas domum ibimus (§ 298).
§ 288. Caesar seeing the enemy off their guard suddenly attacked them.	Caesar, quum hostes incautos videret, eos subito adortus est.

Note. *Quum* meaning *at the time when* is occasionally found with an Imperfect Indicative. See Madvig § 358.

§ 289. Caesar having returned from Gaul entered the city without delay.	Caesar, quum ex Galliā redisset, urbem sine morā intravit.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

(See § 145.)

- § 290. As you sow, so shall you reap. Ut sementem feceris, ita metes (§ 298).
 We asked them how they were. Ut valerent interrogavimus.

Se and Suus.

- § 291. Fabius said that if Brutus would restore to him *his* property, he in turn would restore *his* to Brutus. Fabius dixit, si suas res Brutus sibi reddidisset, se invicem ei res ejus redditurum (§ 298).
 Cato is here with *his* son. Cato cum filio *suo* hic est.
 They have seen neither Cato nor *his* son. Nec Catonem nec filium *ejus* aspexerunt.

Rule. Se and Suus refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb of the Sentence, if it be of the Third Person.

Note. Sui may however be used as Objective Genitive, e. g. conservatio sui, *self-preservation*, without necessarily referring to the Subject of the sentence. Suus may also be used without such reference, when the translation *his own*, *her own*, &c., is implied, as, Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt, *his own countrymen expelled Hannibal from the state*. See Madvig, § 490.

Utrum, Num, -Ne, An.

- § 292. Is this yours or mine? $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Utrum meum} \\ \text{Meumnē} \\ \text{Num meum} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{an tuum est} \\ \text{hoc?} \end{array}$
 I wish to know whether this is yours or mine. Scire $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{utrum meum} \\ \text{meumnē} \\ \text{num meum} \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{an tuum} \\ \text{hoc sit.} \end{array}$
 volo

Notes. Num followed by an is rare. Utrum, -ne, num, are sometimes omitted in these double questions, as, eloquar an sileam, *shall I speak or be silent?* -Nē is sometimes used for an, as, albus aternē fueris ignōrans, *not knowing whether you were white or black*.

- § 293. Can he do this or not? Utrum hoc facere potest annon?
 I wished to know whether he Scire volui utrum hoc facere
 could do this or not. necnē posset.

Rule. For or not use an non in *Oratio Recta*, necnē in *Oratio Obliqua*.

- § 294. It is uncertain whether he will do this without compulsion. Incertum est an sine vi hoc facturus sit.

Rule. After Verbs of *doubt* or *uncertainty*, the first clause of a double question is often omitted, and *an* is translated *whether*. In the above example supply utrum vi coactus after incertum est to complete the sense. See article on an in Andrews' Dictionary.

'Would,' the sign of the Future Tense in Oblique Sentences.

§ 295. ACTIVE VOICE.

(a) He would love.

Amāret.

He said that he would love.

Dixit se amātūrum esse.

With Verbs that have no Supine and consequently no Future Infinitive [which is formed from the Supine] the phrase, 'fore ut' or 'futurum esse ut,' with Imperf. Subjunctive is used, as, 'I hoped the boys would learn,' 'Speravi fore [or futurum esse] ut pueri discerent.'

It was uncertain whether he would love.

Amaturusnē esset incertum erat.

(b) He would have loved.

Amāvisset.

He said that he would have loved.

Dixit se amaturum fuisse.

With Verbs having no Supine, 'futurum fuisse ut,' with Imperfect Subjunctive would be used.

It is doubtful whether he would have loved.

An amaturus fuerit in dubio est.

§ 296. PASSIVE VOICE.

(a) He would be loved.

Amārētur.

He said that he would be loved.

Dixit se amātum iri.

With Verbs having no Supine, 'fore ut' or 'futurum esse ut,' with Subjunctive, would be used.

It was uncertain whether he would be loved.

Incertum erat an amārētur.

The Passive has no Special form for the Future Subjunctive. 'Incertum erat an amaretur' therefore may mean, 'It was uncertain whether he *would* be loved,' or, 'It was uncertain whether he *was* loved.' Such a form as 'futurum esset ut amaretur' is not found. But a Latin writer would probably resort to some contrivance for avoiding this ambiguity, such as changing the construction from a Passive to an Active form, &c.

(b) He would have been loved.

Amatus esset.

He said that he would have been loved.

Dixit futūrum fuisse ut amāretur.

Quod.

§ 297. They accused Socrates, on the ground of his corrupting the youth, but in reality because he had become suspected by those in power.

Socratem accusarunt, quod juventutem corrumpere, tamen ipsā quia in suspicionem magistratibus venerat.

They condemned Marcus to death on the charge of killing his father.

Marcum capitis damnarunt quod patrem occidisset.

The general refused to fight,
not *because* he feared, but *because*
he wished to delay.

Dux pugnam detrectāvit, non
quod timēret, sed quia cunctāri
völuit.

Rule. Quod, *because*, takes an Indicative, except when it expresses (1) an *alleged* reason, as in the first two of the above examples, (2) after the Negative Adverb, a *supposed* or *possible* reason, a reason which *might* be the true one, but is not necessarily so, as in the last example. The *true* reason in such cases is usually expressed by quia or quod with Indicative. The last part of the above example might have been expressed thus, 'more because he wished to delay than because he feared,' and the Latin would be, 'magis quia cunctari voluit, quam quod timeret.'

Future Time.

§ 298. I will do it if I *am* able.
He said he would do it if he
were able.

Faciam, si potero.
Dixit se, si posset, facturum.

When I *return* I will speak of
these things.

Quum rediero, de his rebus
dicam.

He said that when he returned
he would speak of those things.

Dixit se, quum rediisset, de iis
rebus dicturum.

Rule. When the Principal Verb of an *Oratio Recta* is in the Future, Subordinate Verbs, especially when introduced by Temporal or Conditional Conjunctions, must, as a rule, be in the Future also; in the Future Simple Tense, if the action be contemporaneous with that of the Principal Verb, in the Future Perfect if it be anterior. But in *Oratio Obliqua* such Subordinate Verbs are put in the Present, Perfect, Imperfect, or Pluperfect Subjunctive. See Madvig, §§ 339, *Obs.* 1., 340, and 378 (4). In the English idiom the futurity of the Subordinate Clause is lost sight of.

Construction of summus, medius, &c.

§ 299. He was standing on the
top of a tower.

In summâ turre stâbat.

The captives will be led through
the midst of the city.

Captîvi per mēdiām urbem dū-
centur.

Rule. Summus, the Superlative of superus, *high*, is not to be translated *highest* when used of *place*. Summus mons does not mean *the highest mountain* (of several), but *the mountain where it is highest*, i. e. *the top of the mountain*. Again, medius mons does not mean *the middle mountain* (of several), but *the mountain where it is midmost*, i. e. *the middle of the mountain*. So, in extremo itinere, *at the end of the march*, ad imum collem, *at the foot of the hill*, prima lux, *the beginning of light*, i. e. *the dawn*. Intimus, postremus, ultimus are used in the same way.

To.

§ 300. Rule. *To* with Nouns is nearly always the sign of the Dative, except when it implies *motion to*; with Verbs it is usually the sign of the Infinitive, except when it means *in order to*.

This will be useful *to* me.
He will send presents *to* me.
He wished *to* kill Marcus.

Hoc *mibi* utile erit.
Munera *ad me* mittet.
Marcus occidēre voluit.

He sent men *to* kill Marcus.

1. Misit homines ut Marcus occidērent.
2. Misit homines qui Marcus occiderent (§ 283).
3. Misit homines Marcus occisuros (*very rare*).
4. Misit homines ad Marcus occidendum (§ 279).
5. Misit homines Marcus occidendi causā (§ 279).
6. Misit homines Marci occidendi causā (§ 138).
7. Misit homines Marcus occisum (§ 136).

Note. An English Infinitive, e.g. *to kill*, may be (1) a Verb-Noun meaning *the act of killing*, or (2) an Adverbial phrase meaning *in order to kill*. But in Latin the Infinitive is *only* a Verb-Noun, and is *never* used Adverbially except by the poets. Such a sentence, therefore, as 'misit homines Marcus occidere' could only mean 'he sent men *the act of killing* Marcus,' which is absurd. Remember then that '*the Infinitive should never be used to express a purpose in Latin.*'

§ 301. I command you *to* do this.

Impēro tibi ut hoc facias.

I advise you *not to* do this.

Suadeo tibi ne hoc facias.

They allowed him *to* go.

Permiserunt ei ut iret.

He was allowed *to* go.

Permisum (*or* concessum) ei est ut iret.

We asked him *to* go down with us *to* the Forum.

Oravimus ut nobiscum in Forum descenderet.

Rule. By *ut* translate Infinitive

With *ask* and *wish*, *command*, *contrive*,

Allow, *forbid*, *advise* and *strive*:

But never be this rule forgot,

Put *ne* for *ut* when there's a '*not*.'

Exceptions. Volo, jubeo, veto, conor, sino, almost always take an Infinitive rather than an *ut* Clause. After Verbs of *forbidding* (except *veto*) always use *nē*, as the sense is '*to order not to do something.*'

Having.

§ 302. The Perfect Participle Active, *having loved, having advised, etc.*, is wanting in all Latin Verbs, except the Deponents and Semi-deponents. In translating into Latin an English Perfect Participle Active we must, therefore, remember the following

Rules. (a) If a Deponent can be found to suit the sense, it should be used, as,

Having thus spoken the general Dux ita locūtus consēdit.
sat down.

(b) If an Active Verb is employed, we must use quum with Pluperfect Subjunctive if the Principal Verb is a Historic Tense, as,

Having thus spoken the general Dux, quum ita dixisset, con-
sat down. sedit.

But with Perfect Subjunctive if the Principal Verb is a Primary Tense, as,
Having lived honourably so Quum tot annos honestē vix-
many years he is worthy of erit, summā laude dignus est.
the utmost praise. [Quum here = *since*, § 144].

(c) If the Verb is Transitive and has an Object, an elegant rendering can be made by means of the Ablative Absolute, as,

Fabius having conquered the Fabius, hostibus victis, Romam
enemy returned (will return) rediit (redibit).
to Rome.

Note 1. Hostibus victis does not necessarily imply that Fabius was the person who conquered the enemy, which quum vicisset (*or* vicerit) would.

Note 2. Ceno, juro, nubo, poto, prandeo, have Perfect Participles Active, cenatus, *having supped*, juratus, *having sworn*, nupta (of a woman), *having wedded*, potus, *having drunk*, pransus, *having dined*.

§ 303. Caesar having ex- Caesar suos hortatus consedit.
horted his men sat down.

Caesar having exhorted his Caesare suos hortato, clamor
men, a shout arose. exortus est.

Note. Beware of regarding as *absolute* a Substantive, with Participle in agreement, which forms the Subject of a Verb. In the first of the above examples the words 'Caesar having exhorted his men' are not *absolute* (i. e. *independent* of the rest of the sentence), but form an integral part of it.

Of.

§ 304. He will sail to the island Ad insulam Cyprum navigabit.
of Cyprus.

I almost think he will sail to the Haud scio an ad insulam Cy-
island of Cyprus. prum navigaturus sit.

In these and similar expressions, as, 'the city of Rome,' &c., *of* is merely a sign of Apposition. Here are to be noticed the English expressions 'all *of*,

'whole of,' where *of* cannot be expressed by a Partitive Genitive (§ 129, *b*), since the words *all*, *whole*, are from their meaning not partitive. For 'all of whom' say *qui omnes* (Nom.), *quos omnes* (Acc.); 'all of you,' *vos omnes*. Also 'three hundred of us were present,' *trecenti adfuimus*, if *of* is not used partitively; but *trecenti nostrum*, or *ex numero nostro*, adfuerunt, if it is used partitively.

§ 305. The barbarians use *Barbāri ligneis ensibus utuntur.*
swords of wood.

Of here denotes *quality* or *material*.

§ 306. He talks of battles, and *De pugnis loquitur, et periculum parvi facit.*
makes light of danger.

Of in the first case = *concerning*; in the second it forms part of the Verb.

§ 307. To rob a temple of its *Templum auro spoliare.*
gold.

Of after *rob*, *defraud*, *deprive*,
Is but a sign of Ablative.

The.

§ 308. The soldiers on the wall *Qui (or quot) in moenibus erant*
perceived me. *milites me aspexerunt.*

Note. There is no Definite Article in Latin, and care is required in translation in order to bring out the English meaning where necessary. *Milites* in *moenibus me aspexerunt* might mean *Soldiers on the wall perceived me* or even *soldiers perceived me on the wall*. For 'the' with Comparatives see §§ 260, 261.

He is not *the* man to do this.
The noble and eloquent Cicero.

Non est is qui hoc faciat.
Cicero, vir nobilissimus atque facundissimus; or, Cicero ille nobilis ac facundus.

The fight at Cannae.

Proelium ad Cannas commissum; or, Proelium Cannense.
Quantam (or quam) virtutem praestiterit memini.

I remember *the* bravery he shewed.

Servum misit, quem habuit fidelissimum.

He sent *the* trustiest slave he had.

The remarkable reputation which he enjoyed.

Existimatio, quam in signem habuit.

Without.

§ 309. He is *without* wisdom. *Sāpientia caret.*

Note. 'Without' before a Substantive is usually expressed by *sine* with Ablative, except when it means 'outside of' which is extra. 'To be without' is *carere* or *egere*: 'without the knowledge of' is *clam*, see § 353. The chief difficulty in the translation of 'without' is when it precedes the Gerund in *-ing*, as in the following examples.

§ 310. I never saw him *without laughing*.

The town was taken *without* a single man *being killed*.

They set out *without delaying* any longer.

He made a long speech *without persuading* any one.

He was condemned *without being punished*.

You cannot learn *without studying*.

You cannot study *without learning*.

Note. Nisi here implies 'without *previously* studying'; quin 'without *subsequently* learning.'

Nunquam eum vidi quin riderem.

Ne ūno quidem interfecto, urbs capta est.

Non amplius morati proficiscuntur.

Orationem longam habuit, nec tamen ulli persuasit.

Damnatus quidem sed non supplicio affectus est.

Discere non pōtes nisi literis stūdueris.

Literis studere non pōtes quin discas.

Instead of.

§ 311. I go *instead of* you.

Hannibal, *instead of* retiring to Capua, ought to have attacked Rome.

Hannibal retired to Capua *instead of* attacking Rome.

Pro te eo.

Hannibal non Capuam recedere sed Romam oppugnare debuit.

Hannibal Capuam recessit, quum Romam oppugnare debuisset (*or* neque Romam oppugnavit).

Instead of desiring the honour, he refuses it when offered him.

Tantum abest ut honorem cupiat (*or*, adeo non honorem cupit), ut oblatum rejiciat.

Too.

§ 312. The way is *too* narrow.

The shoe is *too* large for the foot.

Marcus was much *too* old to have the command of armies.

Nothing was *too* arduous for him to undertake.

Via nimis angusta est; *or*, Via angustior est.

Calcceus major est quam pro pede.

Marcus multo provector aetate fuit quam ut [*or*, quam qui] exercitiis praeeset.

Nihil tam arduum fuit quin is susciperet.

So, Such, As.

§ 313. *As* many men, *so* many opinions.

He is *such as* he has ever been.

Quot homines, tot sententiae.

Talis est qualis semper fuit.

He is not *so* mad *as* you.
Such as remained in the city he
 rewarded.

He is not *such* a man *as* to do
 that.

Cato, *such* was his sagacity
 (or, with his usual sagacity),
 found out this.

Such is your temperance.

As far *as* you are concerned,
 or, *as* regards you.

As far *as* I know.

He raises *as* great forces *as*
 possible.

As soon *as*. The *same* *as*.

Such was the valour of the
 soldiers that they fought the
 whole day long.

Non tam āmens est quam tu.
 Eos, qui in urbe manebant,
 praeemiis affecit.

Non is est qui id faciat.

Cato, quae erat ejus sagacitas
 (or quā erat sagacitate), hoc
 deprehendit.

Quae tua est temperantia.

Quod ad te attinet.

Quod sciam.

Quam maximas potest copias
 comparat; or, copias quam
 maximas comparat.

Simul atque. Idem qui.

Ea erat militum virtus, ut to-
 tum diem pugnarent.

Some, Any.

§ 314. Some one may ask.

Some one may say.

Some said that Croesus, *others*
 that Cyrus would conquer.

Some fly in one direction *some*
 in another.

Let no one say this.

If I have any ability.

There are some who think.

There were some who thought.

Does anyone think so?

Quaerat quispiam (or aliquis).

Dixerit (or dicat) aliquis.

Alii Croesum, alii Cyrum vic-
 tūrum dicebant.

Alii aliam in partem (or alias in
 partes) fugiunt.

Ne quis hoc dicat.

Si quid ingenii in me est.

Sunt qui putent.

Erant qui putarent.

Ecquis ita putat?

Rules. (a) *Some*, meaning 'some one or other,' whom we do not know,
 is aliquis or nescio quis; meaning 'a certain person,' whom we know but
 do not think it necessary to name, it is quidam.

(b) *Some*, meaning 'a few' or 'several' is nonnulli or aliquot; meaning
 'a little' it is nonnihil, and, when used of quantity, aliquantum.

(c) *Any* is quispiam and sometimes aliquis; *any* in a question is ecquis or
 num quis; *any you please* is quivis, quilibet; *any at all* quisquam (Subst.),
 ullus (Adj.); after 'if' or 'lest,' *any* is usually quis.

(d) *Nobody*, *no one*, [i. e. not *any* body, not *any* one] is nemo; but
 instead of 'that nobody,' in Final Clauses, the Latins said 'lest anybody,' nē
 quis. But in Consecutive Clauses 'that nobody' is ut nemo. In Commands,
 for 'let nobody' they said 'let not anybody,' nē quis. For 'and no one'
 they said 'nor any one,' nec quisquam, nec ullus, and in Commands neu
 quis, neve quis.

English use of the Demonstrative.

§ 315. In Co-ordinate Sentences (§ 84, *note*) we often employ Demonstrative (or Personal) Pronouns in English to avoid the repetition of a Substantive, as 'we found some mushrooms and ate *them*.' The Demonstrative is seldom so used in Latin, the repetition of the Substantive being avoided

(a) by making it the Object of both Verbs, as,

Some covet riches, others de- spise <i>them</i> .	Divitias alii cupiunt, alii sper- nunt.
------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

Note. This cannot be done if the Verbs take different Cases, as,

Some blamed the general, others congratulated <i>him</i> on his vic- tory.	Alii ducem culpāre, alii vic- toriam ei gratulārī (§ 275).
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

(b) by making a Participle do duty for one of the co-ordinate sentences, as,

He summoned the soldiers, and thus addressed <i>them</i> .	Milites convocatos ita allocutus est.
---------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

§ 316. In particular be careful *never* to translate *literally* the expressions *that of, those of*. Either

(a) repeat the Substantive, as,

The fleet of the Romans joined <i>that of</i> the allies.	Sociorum classi classis Roma- norum conjuncta est.
--------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

or (b) introduce an Adjective with which the second Substantive can be understood in agreement, as,

The fleet of the Romans joined <i>that of</i> the allies.	Sociorum classi Romana con- juncta est.
--------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

Here *classi* coming immediately before *Romana* shews that *classis* is to be understood with the latter word.

or (c) omit the second Substantive altogether, as,

The keels are much flatter than <i>those of</i> our ships.	Carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium sunt.
---------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Ways of translating by a Latin Participle.

§ 317. He <i>attacked and</i> routed the enemy.	Hostes adortus profligāvit.
----------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------

He <i>burnt and</i> destroyed the bridge.	Pontem incensum delevit.
----------------------------------------------	--------------------------

This accident impedes his right hand <i>as he is endeavouring</i> to draw his sword.	Hic casus gladium edūcēre cōnanti dextram morātur ma- num.
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Leonidas, <i>though</i> overpowered, would not yield.	Leōnidas sup̄erātus cēdērē ta- men nōlūit.
----------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

Xerxes, *when* conquered by the
Greeks, fled back to Asia.

If expelled from Rome, he will
go to Athens.

I did this *because* Caesar ad-
vised me.

Much like *one who fears*.

Xerxes a Graecis victus in
Asiam refūgit.

Romā expulsus Athēnas ibit.

Haec Caesāre mōnente fēci.

Multum similis metuenti.

Uses of the Prepositions.

. These Prepositions are arranged in the order given in §§ 111, 122. Only the commoner uses are here given. For a further account consult any good Dictionary, Roby's Lat. Gr. §§ 1800-2192, or the Publ. Sch. Lat. Gr. §§ 70-72.

(See § 111.)

§ 318. *Ante*, *before*, as, ante muros, *before the walls*, ante lucem, *before dawn*. Often used as an Adverb, *previously*.

§ 319. *Apud*, *at*, *near*, and—when used of an author—*in*.

To sup *at* a friend's house.

Apud amicum cenare.

They waited *near* the town.

Apud oppidum morati sunt.

Note. Apud denotes *rest* at or near, ad denotes direction, motion, etc. Originally also apud was used only of nearness of *persons*, ad only of nearness of *places*.

We find this *in* Plato.

Apud Platonem hoc invenimus.

He is not in his senses.

Non apud se est. (*Poet.*)

§ 320. *Ad*, *to*, *towards*, *at*, *about* or *almost* (of number).

I wrote a letter *to* him.

Litteras ad eum dedi (scripsi).

From this point the country
stretches *towards* the North.

Inde ad Septentriones regio
vergit.

The defeat *at* Cannae.

Clades ad Cannas accepta.

About (almost) 40 years old.

Annos ad quadraginta natus.

Note. Other phrases are, ad extremum, *finally*; ad hoc, *in addition to this*; ad verbum, *word for word*; servi ad remum = *rowers*; nihil ad me (sc. attinet), *this is no concern of mine*.

§ 321. *Adversum*, *Adversus*, *toward* or *to* (in a friendly sense), *against* (in a hostile sense).

How shall I conduct myself
towards Caesar.

Quonam modo adversus Cae-
sarem me geram?

To these things he replied.

Adversus ea respondit.

I will strive *against* you.

Adversus te contendam.

§ 322. *Circa*, *Circiter*, *Circum*, *around*, *about*.

Around the city walls.

Circum (circa) muros urbis.

About the eighth hour.

Octavam circiter horam.

§ 323. *Cis, Citra, on this side*, as *Belgae cis Rhenum incolunt, the Belgae dwell on this side the Rhenus.*

§ 324. *Contra, opposite, against.* Often used as Adverb, *on the opposite side, on the other hand, on the contrary.*

One side of this island is *opposite* Gaul. *Hujus insulae unum latus est contra Galliam.*

To conspire *against* a king. *Contra regem conjurare.*

§ 325. *Erga, towards* (almost always in a friendly sense, amongst the Classical writers), as, *benevolentia amicorum erga nos, the kind feeling of our friends towards us.*

§ 326. *Extra, outside, beyond*, as, *extra muros, outside the walls, extra modum, beyond measure.*

§ 327. *Infra, below, beneath*, as, *terra infra caelum est, earth is below the heaven, id infra grammatici officium est, That is beneath the business of a grammarian.*

§ 328. *Inter, between, among, during.*

Mount Jura is *between* the *Mons Jura inter Sequānos et Sequani and Helvetii.* *Helvetios est.*

He is *amongst* the wounded. *Inter saucios est.*

All the iniquitous and disgraceful deeds that have been committed *during* ten years. *Omnia quae inter decem annos nefarie flagitioseque facta sunt.*

Note. *Inter* *sicarios damnari, to be condemned on a charge of assassination, inter falcarios venire, to visit the scythe-makers' street.* The Reciprocal Pronoun *one another* is rendered by *inter*, as, *colloquimur inter nos, we converse with one another; pueri inter se amant, the boys love one another.*

§ 329. *Intra, within*, as, *intra urbem, within the city.*

§ 330. *Juxta, near, next to.* Often used as Adverb, *near, equally, or in like manner.*

Near the temple of Castor. *Juxta aedem Castōris.*

Next to the worship of the Gods let faith between man and man be cultivated. *Juxta divinas religiones fides humana colatur.*

§ 331. *Ob, (rarely) before, (much more commonly) on account of.*

Death often passed *before* his eyes. *Mors ob oculos saepe versata est.*

On account of the mindful wrath of Juno. *Memōrem Junonis ob iram.*

§ 332. *Penes, in the power of*, as, *me penes est custodia mundi, the guardianship of the world is in my power.*

§ 333. *Pone, behind (rare)*, as, *pone aedem Castoris, behind Castor's temple.* Used rarely as Adverb, *behind, after.*

§ 334. *Post, behind, after.* Often used as Adverb, *behind, afterwards.*

You were hiding *behind* the bed Tu post carecta latebas.
of sedge.

Six years *after* the capture of Sexennio post Veios captos.
Veii.

§ 335. *Praeter, beside or past, beyond, contrary to, in addition to, except.* Also used as Adverb, *besides.*

Next day he led out his forces Postridie ejus diei (*see also* § 372,
past the camp of Caesar. note) praeter castra Caesaris
suas copias produxit.

Many things happened to me Multa praeter spem mihi even-
beyond my hopes. erunt.

He arrived *contrary to* every- Praeter opinionem omnium
one's expectation. pervenit.

They brought ten men each Denos praeter se ad colloquium
besides themselves to the con- adduxerunt.
ference.

They have no clothing *except* Vestitus, praeter pelles, non
skins. habent.

§ 336. *Prope, near, as prope Caesaris hortos, near the gardens of Caesar.*
Often used as Adverb, *near, nearly*, the Comparative and Superlative of
which, propius, proxime, are often used as Prepositions with an Accusative.

§ 337. *Propter, beside or near (rare), on account of.*

We sat down *near* Plato's Propter statuum Platonis con-
statue. sedimus.

On account of the cold the corn Propter frigus frumenta ma-
was not ripe. tura non erant.

§ 338. *Per, through, during, by=by means of.*

Through the waves. Per undas.

During many years. Per multos annos.

He who acts *by* another acts *by* Qui facit per alium facit per
himself. se.

§ 339. *Secundum, along, next to, according to.*

Along the river. Secundum flumen.

Next to you I have no greater Secundum te nihil est mihi
friend than solitude. amicis solitudine.

To live *according to* nature. Secundum naturam vivere.

§ 340. *Supra, above, beyond.* Used also as Adverb, *above, previously, more.*

Atticus was sitting *above* me at Supra me Atticus, infra Verrius
table, Verrius below. accumbat.

Beyond one's powers. Supra (*also* ultra) vires.

§ 341. *Versus, towards, as, Brundisium versus, towards Brundisium.*

§ 342. *Ultra, beyond, as, ultra eum locum, beyond that place.*

§ 343. *Trans, across, as, trans mare, across the sea.*

§ 344. *In with Accusative, into, to, for (of time), according to, against.*

They make an incursion *into* the territories of the Remi. In fines Remorum incursionem faciunt.

He puts the enemy *to flight*. Hostes in fugam dat.

Peace was made *for* two years. Pax in biennium facta.

After the manner of slaves. Servilem in modum.

Turn your swords *against* me. In me convertite ferrum.

Note. Other phrases are, in multam noctem, *deep into the night*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in posterum, *for the future*; trecenti nummi in capita, *300 sesterces for each person*.

§ 345. *Sub with Accusative, (motion) under, up to, about (of time), just before or just after (of time).*

To send an army *under* the yoke. Exercitum sub jugum mittere.

They come *up to* the wall. Sub murum succedunt.

About nightfall. Sub noctem.

Just after cockcrow. Sub galli cantum.

§ 346. *Super with Accusative, above, as, Nomentanus erat super ipsum, Porcius infra, Nomentanus was above the host at table, Porcius below him.*

§ 347. *Subter with Accusative, beneath, as, subter fastigia tecti, beneath the roof of the house.*

(See § 122.)

§ 348. *A, Ab, Abs, from, by=by agency of, on the side of.*

How changed *from* the mighty Hector! Quantum mutatus ab illo Hectore!

He was slain *by* his own men. A suis interfectus est.

Gaul touches the Rhine *on the side of* the Sequani. Gallia ab Sequānis Rhenum attingit.

Note. So, ab aliquo stare, facere, sentire, or esse, *to be on one's side*; hoc est a me or a me facit, *this is in my favour*. Other phrases are, a summo bibere, *to drink in succession beginning from the head of the table*; (servus) a manu, *a secretary*; a fronte, *in the van*; a latere, *in the flank*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*.

§ 349. *Absque, without, rare except among the comic writers in phrases like absque te foret, if it were not for you.*

§ 350. *Coram, in the presence of, as, coram populo loqui, to speak in presence of the people.*

§ 351. *De, from, down from, of, concerning.*

They set forth *from* their territories. De finibus suis exierunt.

He threw himself <i>down from</i> the wall.	De muro se projecit.
The other instances <i>of</i> this kind.	Cetera de hoc genere.
A temple built <i>of</i> snow-white marble.	Templum niveo de marmore factum.
They treat <i>concerning</i> peace.	De pace agunt.

Note. Other phrases are, de nocte, *by night*; de tertia vigilia, *at the third watch*; de more, *according to custom*; de integro, *afresh*; de improvviso, *unexpectedly*; de industria, *on purpose*.

§ 352. *Palam*, in the presence of, as, *palam* Caesar, in the presence of Caesar. More commonly used as Adverb, *openly*.

§ 353. *Clam*, without the knowledge of, as, *clam* patre (also *clam* patrem), *without my father's knowledge*. Often used as Adverb, *secretly*.

§ 354. *Cum*, with, (1) in the sense of *together with*, as, *vagamur egentes cum conjugibus et liberis*, *we are wandering in poverty with our wives and children*; *Romani cum Gallis contendunt*, *the Romans contend with the Gauls*; (2) denoting *manner*, as, *cum celeritate venit*, *he came with speed*.

§ 355. *Ex*, *E*, out of, from, after, of, on account of, in accordance with.

He runs <i>out of</i> the house.	Ex aedibus currit.
He returned <i>from</i> Asia.	Ex Asia rediit.
<i>After</i> his consulship Cotta set out for Gaul.	Cotta ex consulatu est pro- fectus in Galliam.

Note 1. So *aliud ex alio*, *one thing after another*; *diem ex die expectare*, *to wait one day after another, from day to day*.

A statue made <i>of</i> bronze.	Statua ex aere facta.
When the state had grown alarmed <i>on account of</i> the debt.	Quum esset ex aere alieno commota civitas.

In accordance with a decree of the Senate. Ex senatusconsulto.

Note 2. Other phrases are, *e re*, *for the advantage of*; *ex injuria*, *for the injury of*; *e regione*, *opposite*; *e vestigio*, *instantly*; *ex improvviso*, *unexpectedly*; *ex aequo*, *ex commodo*, etc., *for aequo, commode, etc.*; *heres ex asse*, *heir to the whole estate*, *ex sententia*, *to one's satisfaction*.

§ 356. *Sine*, without, as, *sine ulla dubitatione*, *without any doubt*.

§ 357. *Tenus*, as far as, is placed after its Case, and takes Gen. or Abl., as, *urbium Corcyrae tenus*, *as far as the cities of Corcyra*; *Ariminum tenus*, *as far as Ariminum*.

§ 358. *Pro*, before, in the front part of, *for*=in behalf of, *instead of*, as, *in proportion to* or *according to*.

The camp is pitched *before* the walls. Castra pro moenibus locantur.

Having announced this matter
on (*i.e.* standing on the front
part of) the platform.

To fight for altars and hearths.
I will go *instead of* you.

I have brought him up *as* my
own son.

According to one's ability.

§ 359. *Prae*, before, compared with, owing to.

He carried a dagger *before* him.
They are thought little of *in*
comparison with him.

Owing to the multitude of darts
we shall not see the sun.

Notice also the phrase *prae se ferre*, to shew, exhibit.

§ 360. *In* with Ablative, in, on, during, in the case of.

He is *in* the city.

He has a crown *on* his head.

During my youth.

This happens most fortunately
in the case of Crassus.

Note. Other phrases are, in aere alieno esse, to be in debt; pons in flumine, a bridge over a river.

§ 361. *Sub* with Abl., under, (of time) at, as, sub divo, under the open sky, sub adventu Caesaris, at the arrival of Caesar.

§ 362. *Super* with Abl., upon (rare), concerning, as, multa super Priamo rogitans, asking many things about Priam.

§ 363. *Subter* with Abl., under, as, subter densa testudine, under a thick testudo.

Miscellaneous.

§ 364. Whilst humouring the
young men I forgot that I was
old.

Dum obsëquor adolescentibus
me senem esse oblitus sum.

Rule. *Dum*, in the sense of *whilst*, is usually found with the Present rather than the Imperfect Indicative in describing past events. *Madv.* 336, *Obs.* 2.

§ 365. He causes engines to be
constructed *in order that* he
may *more* easily storm the city.

Machinas extruendas curat
quo facilius urbem expug-
net.

Rule. *Quo* is used for *ut* final with comparative Adjectives and Adverbs.

§ 366. How much strength still
remains to you!

Quantum roböris adhuc tibi
supërest!

He had eloquence enough but too little wisdom. Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum habuit.

Rule. The Neuters of Adjectives denoting *quantity* are frequently used as Substantives, and take a dependent Genitive of Partition, e. g. quantum, tantum, aliquantum, quid, nonnihil or aliquid, plus, plurimum, minus. (To these must be added the Adverbs, parum, *too little*, satis, *enough*, nimis, *too much*, and abunde, *abundance of*.) The poets extend this usage to other Adjectives besides those of quantity, as, amara curarum, *the bitterness of cares*.

§ 367. He departed from Rome unwillingly. Romā invitus discessit.

Note. It is constantly necessary, particularly in poetry, to translate a Latin Adjective by an English Adverb. The use of matutinus, vespertinus, nocturnus, for *in the morning, in the evening, at night, etc.*, is especially frequent.

§ 368. Not even a king may kill men uncondemned. Indemnātos occidere ne rēgi quidem licet.

Rule. The words ne quidem, *not even*, are never written together but always have the word or words *emphasized* by quidem written *between them*.

§ 369. He has accurately described *not only* the earth *but also* the stars. Non solum terras sed etiam stellas accuratē descripsit.

He *not only* did *not* spare foreign troops, but *not even* his own. Non modō aliēnis sed ne suis quidem militibus pēpercit.

Rule. Non modo, *not only*, when followed by nē quidem is used for non modo *non*. Madvig, 461, b (b).

§ 370. It was owing to Cato that I was not condemned to death. Per Catōnem stetit quōmīnus cāpītis damnārer.

That victory cost the Carthaginians much blood. Multo sanguīne ea Poenis victōria stetit.

Literally, *stood to (the credit of) the Carthaginians at the price of much blood*. Poenis is Dat., and sanguine Abl. of Price.

§ 371. The Romans were superior *not only* in forces *but also* in money. Romāni quum copiis tum argento superiōres erant.

Caesar, Pompeius, and Crassus. Caesar, Pompeius, Crassus; or, Caesar, et Pompeius, et Crassus.

§ 372. Publius Crassus with the 7th legion was wintering very near the Ocean. P. Crassus cum legione septima proximus Oceanum hiebat.

Note. An Accusative is sometimes found after the Adjectives propior, proximus; also after the adverbs pridie, postridie, as postridie pugnam, *on the day after the battle*.

§ 373. He is more prudent than wise. Prudentior quam sapientior est.
The wiser a man is the happier he is. Quo quis sapientior eo beatior;
or Ut quisque sapientissimus ita beatissimus.

More than six hundred fell. Plus sexcenti ceciderunt.

Note. Quam is often omitted after plus, amplius, minus.

§ 374. I entrust you with the command. Imp̄rium tibi committo [or permitto].
I threaten you with death. Mortem tibi minor.
This happened to me when a boy. Hoc mihi puero accidit.

§ 375. They were delighted with your letter. Eos epistolā tuā summo gaudio affecit.

Note. The Passive is more frequently used in English than in Latin, and often has to be rendered by the equivalent Active form.

§ 376. He is dead. Mortuus est.

Note. The English Present, especially in the Passive Voice, as, 'the trees are cut down,' often implies a *completed* action, and in such case must always be rendered by the Latin Perfect. So 'the trees were cut down' if *were* = *had been*, must be Pluperfect in Latin.

§ 377. I begin to love. Amare coepi.
I begin to repent of the deed. Paenitēre me facti coepit.
I ceased to love. Amare desii.
I ceased to be ashamed of my poverty. Paupertatis me pudēre desiit.

Note. Certain Verbs, as possum, coepi, debeo, desino, soleo, are used Personally or Impersonally according to the nature of their Complementary Verbs (§ 273). Coepi and desino sometimes take a Passive form when their Complementary Verb is Passive (Madvig, § 161), as,

The city began to be besieged. Urbs obsidēri coepta est.

§ 378. Be sure you return. Fac redeas.
Don't speak. Ne locutus sis.

Note on the Imperative. The Latins employ many circumlocutions to avoid a direct Imperative. Thus (a) for Affirmative Imperatives we find fac intelligam, fac valeas, velim abeas, etc., (b) for Negative Imperatives we find cave credas, nolo dicas, noli contendere, ne credideris. Nē with 2nd Pers. Present Subjunctive, as ne credas, is seldom used, and nē with 2nd Pers. Imperative, as ne crede, *hardly ever* except in Poetry. The poets also use the forms fuge suspicari, mitte sectari, parce timere, omitte mirari, absiste moveri, desine sperare, and the like, for *suspect not, follow not*, etc.

§ 379. These things are difficult to do (or to be done). Haec factu difficilia sunt.
It is difficult to tame a lion. Leonem domare difficile est.

Note. The Supine in -u is found with Adjectives, and with *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*. It is Passive in its signification, and does not govern a Case. As a rule, avoid using it unless it can be rendered in English by a Present Infinitive Passive.

§ 380. Lo, Priam!

En Priāmus!

Lo, four altars!

En quattuor aras!

Note. Most Interjections may be followed by a Nominative or Vocative Case; some, as *en*, *ecce*, *heu*, *proh*, by an Accusative also. *Hei* and *vae* prefer a Dative, as, *hei mihi*, *vae victis*.

§ 381. He hopes to come.

Sperat se venturum esse.

He promises to come.

Promittit se venturum esse.

Rule. After *hope* and *promise* use the Future Infinitive in Latin.

§ 382. He promised to come. Promisit se venturum.

Note. Venturum for venturum esse. The omission of esse generally, and of est, sunt, in Principal (rarely in Subordinate) Clauses is common in all Latin authors.

§ 383. It is necessary that you should do this.

Necesse est hoc faciās [*for ut hoc facias*].

Take care you do not waste your time.

Cave tempus absūmas [*for ne absumas*].

Rule. When licet, necesse est, and oportet take the Subjunctive, they usually omit ut. Ne is sometimes omitted after certain Verbs, as caveo.

§ 384. He pities no one.

Nullius miseretur.

Rule.

From nemo let me never see

Neminis or nemine.

Use nullius, nullo, instead of neminis, nemine.

§ 385. Many great wars.

Multa et magna bella.

Rule. Two Adjectives cannot be joined to the same Noun in Latin without a connecting particle in the same way as they are in such English phrases as 'a bold bad man,' 'a cold wet day,' &c. Say homo audacissimus ac sceleratissimus, &c.

§ 386. They returned each man to his own city.

In suam quisque urbem redierunt.

He has leisure for studying philosophy.

Philosophiae vacat.

It is all over with the state.

Actum est de republicā.

For four years I have been the pupil of Socrates.

Quartum jam annum Socratem audio.

§ 387. I fear he *will* come.

Vereor nē veniat.

I fear he will *not* come.

Vereor ut (*or ne non*) veniat.

I feared he *would* come.

Verebar nē veniret.

I feared he would *not* come.

Verebar ut (*or ne non*) veniret.

§ 388. I have no reason to find fault with old age.

I have no reason to fear you.

§ 389. Whether this news is true or false, I shall set out at dawn.

Whether this news is true or false is uncertain.

I wish to ascertain whether we are conquerors or conquered.

I wish to act honourably, whether we are conquerors or conquered.

Note. 'Whether' introducing a *supposition* is *sive*; when Interrogative it is *utrum*.

§ 390. He is the best poet in all the world.

All the best citizens are accused of theft.

The pleasantest days are *always* the shortest.

§ 391. Hating the Trojans to a man.

Note. *Exosus*, *hating*, *perosus*, *hating*, and sometimes *pertaesus*, *weary of*, though Passive Participles in form, are used Actively and take an Accusative.

§ 392. Romulus slew Remus. Remus was slain by Romulus.

We need medicine.

Medicine is needed by us.

They envy Cotta.

Cotta is envied by them.

Nihil habeo quod incūsem se-
nectutem.

Non est cur te timeam.

Sive verā sive falsā haec sunt,
primā luce proficiscar.

Utrum vera an falsa haec sint
incertum est.

Utrum victōres an victi simus
cognoscere volo.

Honeste agere volo, sive vic-
tores sive victi sumus.

Poeta est qualis toto orbe
terrarum nemo.

Optimū quisque cīvis furti
accusātur.

Jucundissimus quisque dies bre-
vissimus est.

Exosus ad unum Trojanos.

Romulus Remum interfecit.

Remus a Romulo interfectus
est.

Medicinae indigemus.

Medicinae a nobis indiget.

Cottae invident.

Cottae ab iis invidetur.

Rule. In transposing from Active to Passive form in Latin, (a) If the Verb has a Direct Object, this will become Subject of the Passive Verb, (b) if otherwise, the Verb will become Impersonal (e.g. *pugnant*, *they fight*, becomes *ab iis pugnatur*), and if any Case follows, it will be the one which the Verb governed in the Active Voice, as *medicinae* [Gen.], and *Cottae* [Dat.], in the above examples.

§ 393. (*Latin Letter.*)

Cambridge, October 18.

My dear Marcus,

I am writing in great haste, as the post is just going out. I arrived here yesterday, and have visited most places of interest in the town; but it would be impossible in this hurried letter to do justice to its numerous and splendid buildings, and indeed it is not worth while attempting to do so, as you will, I expect, be here yourself in a few days, which I am very glad of. I am quite well and hope to have an equally good account of you. Give my love to all at home, and

Believe me, Your affectionate brother,
Quintus.

Quintus Marco S. D. P.

S. V. B. E. E. V. Summa festinatione scribebam, carissime frater, quod in eo erat ut tabellarius proficisceretur. Huc heri perveni, et quae in oppido digna visu sunt pleraque inspexi, sed neque raptim scribenti tot tantaque aedificia satis describere licet, neque enim operae pretium est id facere conari, quod te ipsum intra paucos dies adfore arbitror, quae res me vehementer delectat. Te tuosque multum amamus. Vale.

Data (or dabam) a. d. xv. Kal. Nov. Cantabrigiae.

Observe, in regard to the Latin of the above letter,

(a) The letters S. D. P. are for *Salutem Dicit Plurimam*. We might also write *Quintus Marco S.*, or *Quintus Marco* alone.

(b) The letters S. V. B. E. E. V. are for *Si Vales Bene Est, Ego Valeo*, and are the Latin equivalent for the words, 'I am quite well, and hope to have an equally good account of you,' which form part of the *conclusion* of the English letter. The words corresponding to 'your affectionate brother *Quintus*,' with which the English letter ends, also appear quite early in the Latin letter.

(c) In the epistolary style the Latin writer often has in his eye the time when the letter will be read, and therefore, instead of the Present and Perfect, uses the Imperfect and Pluperfect in reference to events in progress or just completed at the time of writing, those being the tenses which the *receiver* would use in reference to such events. Hence *scribebam* and *erat* in the letter given above. On the contrary, everything which is said in general terms and without particular reference to the time of composing the letter is put in the usual tense. Hence *perveni, sunt, inspexi, &c.* (See *Madvig, § 345.*)

(d) The date and place of writing appear at the foot of a Latin letter, and not, as is more usual with us, at the beginning. With *data*, or *dabam*, supply *tabellario*.

CONDITIONAL OR HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES.

§ 394. Sentences containing a Conditional clause (§ 199 *e*) may be divided into three classes.

(a) Where the condition is *assumed to be a fact*, and we wish to state what the consequence is. The usual formula is

Si haec facis, peccas.

(Greek. εἰ ταῦτα δράς, ἀμαρτάνεις.)

If you do this, you sin.

(b) Where the condition is assumed, as (1) *likely*, (2) *possible*, and we wish to state what the consequences (1) *will be*, (2) *would be*, respectively. The formulas are

1. Si haec facies, peccabis.

(εἰ ταῦτα δράσεις, ἀμαρτήσῃς.)

Si haec feceris, peccabis.

(ἐὰν ταῦτα δράσῃς, ἀμαρτήσῃς.)

If you do this, you will sin. (See § 298.)

2. Si haec facias, pecces.

(εἰ ταῦτα δράῃς, ἀμαρτάνοις ἄν.)

If you were to do this (at any time), you would sin.

(c) Where the condition is assumed as (1) *not taking place now*, (2) *not having taken place previously*, and we wish to state what the consequences (1) *would be*, (2) *would have been*, respectively. The formulas are

1. Si haec faceres, peccares.

(εἰ ταῦτα ἔδρας, ἡμάρτανες ἄν.)

If you were doing this (now), you would sin (or be sinning)¹.

2. Sic haec fecisses, peccasses.

(εἰ ταῦτα ἔδρασας, ἡμάρτες ἄν.)

If you had done this, you would have sinned.

§ 395. In Oratio Obliqua these forms are

(a) Ait te, si haec facias, peccare.

(b) Ait te, si haec { facias
feceris } peccatum esse.

(c) 1. Aiebat te, si haec faceres, peccatum esse.

2. Aiebat te, si haec fecisses, peccatum fuisse.

¹ Si with Imperfect Subjunctive denotes *continuous* action, and as a rule refers to present time. But sometimes it refers to past time, and then (in default of an exact English equivalent) we must translate 'If he had done (or been doing) this, he would have sinned.'

PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN¹.

§ 396. Latin was probably pronounced as follows:—

(1) Vowels.

ā like the *a* in *father*; *ă* like the *a* in *along*.

ē like the *a* in *pane*; *ĕ* like the *e* in *men*.

ī like the *i* in *machine*; *ĭ* like the *i* in *pity*.

i preceded by a vowel was probably pronounced like *y*: thus *maior, eius, Troia, cuius* [often written *major, ejus, Troja, cujus*] are pronounced *mā-yor, ē-yus, Trō-ya, cū-yus*.

ō like the *oa* in *moat*; *ŏ* like the *o* in *cot*.

ū like the *u* in *rule*, not with a *y*-sound prefixed as in *mule*; *ŭ* like the *u* in *put*, not as in *cut*.

y as German *ü*, the sound inclining to *i*.

(2) Diphthongs. The rule is to pronounce each constituent vowel as rapidly as possible. This will give—

ae as the *ai* in *bail*.

au as the *ow* in *power*.

oe as the *oy* in *boy*, the *o* being more distinct than the *e*.

ui (in *huic, cui*) as French *oui*.

(3) Consonants.

c was always pronounced as *k*; *g* as *g* in *get*.

ng as *ng + g*, as in *anger*, not as in *banger*.

r was always trilled; thus *per* is sounded as in *perry*, not as in *pert*.

s was almost always sharp [as the *s* of *sin*]; in a few words where the *s* comes between two vowels, as *rosa, musa, miser*, it had a soft sound like *z*.

t was pronounced as it is in English, except that it never had the sound of *sh* when followed by *io*.

ch was sounded as *k* followed by *h*.

bs, bt were sounded as *ps, pt*, and were often so written, as *aps, spter*.

v perhaps as *w*. *qu* as in English.

¹ Originally these rules were founded on the Syllabus of Latin pronunciation (Deighton and Bell, Cambridge; Parker, Oxford), drawn up in 1873 at the request of Head Masters of Schools. They have now been altered in order to admit some of the views propounded in Roby's Latin Grammar, §§ 29-82. The question is still open to so much doubt and uncertainty that the reader who desires detailed information must consult the works above mentioned, and other treatises on the subject.

I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS

* * The figures refer to Sections. In a few instances the page has also been given, in order to facilitate reference.

- Abbreviations, 176-7.
 Ablative Absolute, 123, 262, 302-3.
 Ablative Case, 9; Definition of the, 120; Various uses of the, 121; Prepositions governing the, 122, 348-363; Absolute, 123, 262, 302-303; Verbs governing the, 124; Adjectives governing the, 125; Substantives governing the, 126, 263; Examples of the, 255-263.
 Ablative Plural, of First Declension in -abus, 156 *d*; of Fourth Declension in -ubus, 159 *b*.
 Accusative and Infinitive, 112.
 Accusative Case, 9; Definition of the, 108; of the Direct Object, 109; Other uses of the, 110; Prepositions governing the, 111, 318-347; Verbs taking two, 114; Examples of the, 240-246.
 Accusing, Verbs of, 131 (2).
 Acquitting, Verbs of, 131 (2).
 Active Voice, 38; Rule for transposing to Passive, 392.
 Adjectives, 5, 20-23; Comparison of, 24-27, 162; Notes on, 161; Rule for Concord of, 95 *b*; used Adverbially, 82, 241, 367.
 Admonishing, Verbs of, 131 (2).
 Adverbial Numerals, 164.
 Adverbs, 5, 81; Comparison of, 28, 162 *d*; Derivation of, 82.
 Adversative Conjunctions, 84 (1) *c*.
 Advising, construction after Verbs of, 301.
 Agent, Ablative of the, 121 *m*; Dative of the, 117 *e*, 142.
 'All,' 229 *note*, 390.
 Allowing, construction after Verbs of, 118 *c*, 301.
 Alphabet, 1.
 Anacoluthon, 183.
 Anapaest, 184.
 Anomalous, Verbs, 59; Substantives, 163.
 Antepenultima, 179.
 Antithesis, 182.
 'Any,' 314.
 Aorist, 42; definition of, 181; Indicative, translation of, 65.
 Aphaeresis, 182.
 Apocope, 182.
 Apodosis, 181.
 Apposition, definition of, 98; Kinds of, 99; Rule for Case of, 100; Examples of, 230-234.
 Arsis, 184.
 Article, 6.
 'As,' 313.
 Asking, construction with Verbs of, 114, 244, 301.
 Assimilation, 182.
 Asyndeton, 183.
 'At a Place,' 104, 239.

- Attraction, examples of, 218 *note*, 219 *note*, 221, 227-8, 232.
 Author, Genitive of the, 129 *a*.
 Auxiliary Verb, the, 46; Omission of the, 382.
 -ax, Verbals in, with Genitive, 265 *note* 2.
 -bilis, Verbal Adjectives in, with Dative of Agent, 117 *e*.
 Caesura, 184.
 Calendar, the Roman, 170-172.
 Cardinal Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *a*.
 Cases, 9; Syntax of the, 108-131.
 Catalectic, 184.
 Catechism of Latin Syntax, 86-148.
 Causal Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *d*.
 Cause, Ablative of, 121 *l*; Genitive of, 129 *h*.
 Clauses, Principal and Subordinate, 93-4; Varieties of Subordinate Clause, 199.
 Cognate Accusative, 110 *a*, 240.
 Commanding, construction with Verbs of, 118 *c*, 301.
 Common Gender, 8, 180; List of Nouns of, 154 *b*.
 Comparative Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.
 Comparative Table of Verbs in Greek, Latin, English, &c., 58.
 Comparison, of Adjectives, 24-27, 162 *a*, *b*, *c*; of Adverbs, 28, 162 *d*; Ablative of, 121 *c*, 257.
 Complement of the Verb, 99 *note*.
 Complementary Infinitive, 273.
 Composite Subject, rules for the, 217-219.
 Compound Sentence defined, 92.
 Concessive Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *f*.
 Concords, rules of the three, 95, 209-229.
 Condemning, Verbs of, 131.
 Conditional Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *e*.
 Conditional Sentences, 394-5.
 Conjugations, 44; Examples of the, 48-55; Comparative table of endings of the, 56.
 Conjunctions, 5, 84; Co-ordinative, 84 (i); Subordinative, 84 (ii), 199.
 Conjunctive Mood, 202 *note*.
 Consecutive Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *h*.
 Consonants, 2.
 Constructio ad sensum, 183; Examples of, 216, 220.
 Construing, Elementary rules for, 86-89.
 Contraction in Perfect, &c., Tenses, 68.
 Contriving, construction after Verbs of, 301.
 Convicting, Verbs of, 131.
 Co-ordinate Sentences, 84 (i) *note*.
 Co-ordinative Conjunctions, 84 (i).
 Copulative Conjunctions, 84 (i) *a*.
 Copulative Verbs, 96-7, 230-234.
 Cursive Letters, 178.
 Dactyl, 184.
 Dates, how expressed, 165 *b* (4), 236 *note* 2.
 Dative Case, 9; Definition of the, 115; Words that can take a, 116; Various kinds of, 117; Verbs governing the, 118; Passive use of Verbs governing the, 119; Double; 252 *note*; various examples of the, 247-254.
 Dative Plural, of First Declension in -abus, 156 *d*; of Fourth Declension in -ubus, 159 *b*.
 Dativus Commodi, 117 *a*, 247.
 Declension defined, 13.
 Declensions, the five, 14; Examples of the, 15-19; Notes on the, 156-160.
 Defective Nouns, 163 *e*, *f*, *g*, *h*, *j*, *l*.
 Defective Verbs, 74.
 Definition, Genitive of, 129 *e*, 266.
 Definitive Pronouns, 34.
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 33; English use of the, 315-6.
 Dentals, 178.

- Dependent Sentences, 91.
 Deponent Verbs, 40; Conjugation of, 57; Perfect Participle of, used Passively, 57 (p. 66); Irregular, 153.
 Depriving, Verbs of, 124; Adjectives of, 125.
 Derived Nouns, terminations of, 168-9.
 Derived Verbs, 75.
 Desiderative Verbs, 75 *b*, 152 *e*.
 Diaeresis, 184.
 -dicus, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *d*.
 Difference, Dative of, 117 *d*, 250.
 Diminutive Nouns, 168 *b*.
 Diminutive Verbs, 75 *d*.
 Diphthongs, 3.
 Direct Object, Accusative of the, 109; Genitive of the, 127, 129 *e*, 264-5.
 Direct Sentence, kinds of, 90.
 Disjunctive Conjunctions, 84 (i) *b*.
 Distributive Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *c*.
 Divisions of Letters, 2; further list of, 178.
 Double Accusative, 114, 244-6.
 Double Dative, 252 *note*.
 Double Letters, 178.
 Doubtful Gender, Nouns of, 180.
 Dubitative Subjunctive, 198 *c*.
 Duration of Time, 101, 235.
 Ecclipsis, 184.
 Elementary Rules for Construing, 86-89.
 Ellipse, 183.
 Elliptic Genitive, 130.
 Enallage, 183.
 Enclitic, 179.
 Enriching, Verbs of, 124; Adjectives of, 125.
 Epicene Gender, 180.
 -er, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *a*.
 Ethic Dative, 117 *b*.
 Etymological Figures, 182.
 Exclamation, Accusative of, 110 *g*, 380.
 Exclamatory Infinitive, 277.
 Explanation of certain Grammatical Terms, 178-184.
 -ficus, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *d*.
 Fifth Declension, example of, 19; Gender of the, 155 *e*; Notes on the, 160; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.
 Final Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *a*.
 Final Syllables, Quantity of, 186.
 Finite Verb, 41; Rule for Concord of, 95 *a*; of the Sentence, how found, 87.
 First Conjugation, example of, 48, 52; Irregular Verbs of the, 149; Deponents of the, 153 *a*.
 First Declension, example of, 15; Gender of the, 155 *a*; Notes on the, 156; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.
 Flexion, of Nouns, 12; of Verbs, 44.
 Foot, 184.
 Forbidding, construction after Verbs of, 301.
 Fourth Conjugation, Examples of, 51, 55; Irregular Verbs of the, 152; Deponents of the, 153 *d*.
 Fourth Declension, 18; Gender of the, 155 *d*; Notes on the, 159; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.
 Fractions, how expressed, 165 *b* (5).
 Frequentative Verbs, 75 *c*.
 'From a Place,' 103, 238.
 Full Verbs of being, 124; Adjectives of being, 125, 265 *note* 2.
 Future Infinitive Passive, how formed, 137.
 Future Subjunctive, how formed, 47 (p. 22); also 49, 50, 51, 52 (pp. 28, 32, 36, 40).
 Future Time in Subordinate Clauses, 298.
 Gender, 8; Rules of, 154-5.
 Genitive Case, 9; Definition of the,

- 127; distinction between Subjunctive and Objective, 128; classification of uses of the, 129; Verbs governing the, 124 *note*, 131; Adjectives governing the, 125 *footnote*, 248, 265; Examples of the, 264-268.
- Genitive of the Second Declension, 16.
- Genitive Plural, of the First Declension in -um, 156 *c*; of the Second Declension in -um, 157 *c*; of the Third Declension, how formed, 158 *g*.
- Gerundive, used for Gerund + Object, 138-9; Neuter Impersonal Construction of, 140-1; takes Dative of the Agent, 142; Examples of, 279-281; in -undus for -endus, 72.
- Gerunds, Definition of the, 135; Syntax of the, 138-9; Examples of the, 278-9.
- Greek Nouns, declension of, 156 *a*, 157 *a*, 158 *h*.
- Gutturals, 178.
- 'Having,' Rule for, 302-3.
- Hendiadys, 183.
- Hepthemimeral Caesura, 184.
- Heteroclit Nouns, 163 *b*.
- Heterogeneous Nouns, 163 *c*.
- Hexameter, 184.
- Historic Infinitive, 276.
- Historic Present, 208.
- Historic Tenses, 42.
- Hoping, rule for Verbs of, 381.
- Hortative Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Hypallage, 183.
- Hypothetical Sentences, 394-5.
- Hypothetical Subjunctive, 198 *b*.
- Iambus, 184.
- Ides, 170.
- ilis, Comparison of Adjectives in, 26 *b*.
- Imparissyllabic, 180.
- Imperative Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Imperatives, note on certain, 70; Various ways of forming, 378.
- Imperfect Indicative, translation of, 64.
- Impersonal Passive Construction, 39, 80.
- Impersonal Verbs, definition of, 62; List of, 78-80; Syntax of, 132-3; Examples of, 269-272.
- Inceptive Verbs, definition of, 75 *a*; how conjugated, 151 *j*.
- Indeclinable Nouns, 163 *d*; Gender of, 154 *a*.
- Indefinite Pronouns, 37, 166-7.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Command, 200 *c*, 202.
- Indirect Object, Dative of the, 115-16, 247-8.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Question, 200 *b*, 202.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Sentence, 91.
- Indirect (*or* Oblique) Statement, 200 *a*, 202.
- Infinite Verb, 41.
- Infinitive Mood, Definition of, 134-137; Various uses of the, 273-277.
- Inflexions, 12.
- 'Instead of,' 311.
- Instrument, Ablative of, 120 *c*.
- Interest, Roman, 174.
- Interjections, 5, 85, 380.
- Interrogative Forms of the Verb, 60, 292-294.
- Interrogative Pronouns, declension of, 36, 166-7.
- Interrogative Pronouns and Particles, list of, 60 *f*; require Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua, 200 *b*.
- Intransitive Verbs, 39; Impersonal and Passive use of, 80, 119.
- io, -ior, Verbs of 3rd Conjugation in, 50 (p. 35), 57 (p. 66).
- Irregular Comparison of Adjectives, 27.
- Jussive Subjunctive, 198 *e*.
- Kalends, 170.
- Kindred Meaning, Accusative of, 110 *a*, 240.

- Labials, 178.
 Letter, specimen of a Latin, 303.
 Letters, divisions of the, 2, 178.
 Limitation, Accusative of, 110 *b*, 241.
 Liquids, 178.
 Locative Case, 105-6, 120 *note* 2, 239, 258.
 Manner, Ablative of, 121 *k*.
 Matter, Ablative of, 121 *k*.
 Measure, of Space, 107; Ablative of, 121 *g*, 260-1.
 Measure or Metre, 184.
 Metathesis, 182.
 Metre or Measure, 184.
 Miscellaneous Latin phrases, 364-393.
 Money and Weights, Roman, 173-175.
 Moods, 41.
 Motion to, 102, 237.
 Multiplicative Numerals, 164.
 'Must,' how translated, 140-142.
 Mutes, 178.
 Nasals, 178.
 Neuter Passive Verbs, 76.
 Neuter Verbs, definition of, 39.
 Neutral Passive Verbs, 77.
 Nones, 170.
 Notes, on the Conjugations, 61-73; on the Declensions, 156-161; on the Numerals, 165.
 Noun, the, 5 *note*, 7-13.
 Nouns, Anomalous, 163 *a*; Heteroclite, 163 *b*; Heterogeneous, 163 *c*; Indeclinable, 163 *d*; Defective in the Singular, 163 *e, f, g, h*; used only in the Singular, 163 *j*; used only in the Plural, 163 *k*; having a different meaning in the Plural, 163 *l*; various classes of, 180.
 Number, 7, 43.
 Numeral and Quasi-Numeral Adjectives, declension of, 23.
 Numeral Adjectives and Adverbs, list of, 164; Notes on the, 165.
 Object, 39; Accusative of the Direct, 108-9; Indirect, 115-6, 127-8.
 Objective Genitive, 128, 129 *e, f, g*, 264-5.
 Oblique Cases, 10.
 Oblique Command, 200 *c*, 202.
 Oblique Question, 200 *b*, 202.
 Oblique Sentence defined, 91.
 Oblique Statement, 200 *a*, 202.
 'Of,' 304-307.
 Old Latin Forms, of the Verb, 69; of the Noun, 156 *b*.
 Optative Subjunctive, 198 *d*.
 Oratio Obliqua, definition of, 91; Rule for Principal Clauses of, 200; Rule for Subordinate Clauses of, 201; Rule for Speeches Reported in, 202.
 Oratio Recta, 90; Subjunctive in Principal Clauses of, 198; Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses of, 199.
 Ordinal Numerals, 164; Notes on the, 165 *b*.
 Origin, Ablative of, 121 *b*, 256.
 Parisyllabic, 180.
 Parsing Forms, 187-195.
 Participle, ways of translating by a, 317.
 Participles of Passive form used Actively, 57, 302 *c*, *note* 2, 391.
 Particles, 5 *note*, 81-85.
 Partition, Genitive of, 129 *b*, 267, 366.
 Partitive Adjective, Gender of, 267 *note* 2.
 Parts of Speech, 5.
 Passive Impersonals, 80.
 Passive use of Verbs governing the Dative, 119, 254.
 Passive Voice, 38; Rule for transposing from Active to, 392.
 Patronymics, 156 *a*, *note*; formation of, 168 *b* (7).
 Pentameter, 184.
 Penthemimeral Caesura, 184.
 Penultima, 179.

- Perfect Participle Active, how translated into Latin, 302-3.
 Periphrastic Conjugation, 73.
 Person, 43.
 Personal Pronouns, 30.
 Place, Rules of, 102-106, 237-239.
 Place whence, 103. Ablative of, 120 *a*.
 Place where, 104, Ablative of, 120 *b*, 255.
 Pleonasm, 183.
 Point of Time, 101, 236.
 Possessive Pronouns, 32.
 Possessor, Dative of the, 117 *c*, 249; Genitive of the, 129 *a*.
 Potential Subjunctive, 198 *a*.
 Predicate, definition of, 88 *note*; Dative of the, 117 *g*, 252-3.
 Prepositions, 5, 83; governing Accusative, 111; governing Ablative, 122; Meanings of the, 318-363.
 Present Indicative, meanings of, 63.
 Present Subjunctive, meanings of, 66.
 Price, Ablative of, 121 *d*, 259, 370.
 Primary Tenses, 42.
 Principal Clauses, 93; of Oratio Obliqua, 200.
 Principal Parts of the Verb, 45.
 Prolative Infinitive, 273.
 Prolepsis, 183.
 Promising, rule for Verbs of, 381.
 Pronouns, 5, 29-37; Table of Relative Interrogative, and Indefinite, 166-7.
 Pronunciation of Latin, 396.
 Proper Names, Abbreviations of, 176.
 Proportional Numerals, 164 *f*.
 Prosody, 184.
 Protasis, 181.
 Purpose, Dative of, 117 *f*; Genitive of, 266; Clauses expressing a, 199 *a*; Infinitive never used to express a, 300 *note*.
 Pyrrhic, 184.
 Quality, Ablative of, 121 *j*; Genitive of, 107 *note*, 129 *d*.
 Quantity, defined, 4; Laws of, 185-6.
 Quasi-Numeral Adjectives, 23.
 Quasi-Passive Verbs, 77.
 Questions: *see* under 'Interrogative.'
 -re for -ris, *Note* on 71.
 Reciprocal Pronoun, 328 *note*.
 Reduplication, 149 *c*, *note*.
 Reflexive Pronoun, 31; Rule for use of the, 291.
 Relative Pronoun, 35, 166-7; Rule for Concord of, 95 *c*; Examples of Concord of, 222-229; Rule for Mood after, 143; Examples of Mood after, 282-285.
 Reminding, Verbs of, 131.
 Respect, Accusative of, 110 *c*, 242-3; Ablative of, 121 *f*, 256; Genitive of, 129 *h*.
 Roman Calendar, 170-172.
 Roman Weights and Money, 173-175.
 Root, 180.
 Scansion, 184.
 Second Conjugation, example of, 49, 53; Irregular Verbs of the, 150; Deponents of the, 153 *b*.
 Second Declension, examples of, 16; Gender of the, 155 *b*; Notes on the, 157; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.
 Semi-Deponent Verbs, 76, 150 *f*, 151 *k*.
 Sentence, Varieties of the, 90-94; Conditional, or Hypothetical, 394-5.
 Separation, Ablative of, 121 *a*, 256; Dative of, 117 *d*, 250.
 Sequence of Tenses, 148; Additional Notes on the, 204-208.
 Simple Sentence, kinds of, 90.
 'So,' 'such,' 'as,' 313.
 'Some,' 'any,' 314.
 Speeches reported in Oratio Obliqua, 202.
 Spirants, 178.
 Spondee, 184.

- Stem, 11.
 Stems of the Third Declension, 158 *a*.
 Striving, construction after Verbs of, 301.
 Strong Caesura, 184.
 Subject, definition of the, 88; how found, 89; Nominative of the, 89; Accusative of the, 108; Rules for the Composite, 217-219.
 Subjective Genitive, 128, 264.
 Subjunctive Mood, 41; Present Tense of, 66; Other Tenses of, 67; Notes on the, 196-208; in Principal Clauses of Oratio Recta, 198; in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Recta, 199; in Principal Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, 200; in Subordinate Clauses of Oratio Obliqua, 201; Potential use of the, 198 *a*; Hypothetical use of the, 198 *b*; Dubitative use of the, 198 *c*; Optative use of the, 198 *d*; Jussive, Hortative, or Imperative use of the, 198 *e*; differs from Conjunctive, 202 *note*; used to denote an alleged reason or act, 203.
 Subjunctive Tenses, translation of, 66-7.
 Subordinate Clauses, 93-4; Mood of in Oratio Recta, 199; Mood of in Oratio Obliqua, 201.
 Subordinative Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199.
 Substantives, Declension of, 14-19; Anomalous and other, 163.
 'Such,' 313.
 Supines, 136; Rule for Supine in -u, 379.
 Syllables, names of, 179; Quantity of, 185-6.
 Synaeresis, 184.
 Synaloepha, 184.
 Syncope, 182.
 Synesis, 183.
 Syntactical Figures, 183.
 Syntax, Elementary Catechism of, 86-148.
 Temporal Conjunctions, 84 (ii), 199 *c*.
 Tenses, 42.
 Terminations, 12; of Derived Verbs, 75; of Derived Nouns, 168-9.
 Terms used by Grammarians, 178-184.
 'That,' Rule for, 113.
 'That of,' 'those of,' 316.
 'The,' 308.
 Thesis, 184.
 Third Conjugation, example of, 50, 54; Table of Verbs of the, 151; Deponents of the, 153 *c*.
 Third Declension, examples of, 17; Gender of the, 155 *c*; Stems of the, 158 *a*; Accusative and Ablative of the, 158 *b, c, d, e, f*; Genitive Plural of the, 158 *g*; Greek Nouns of the, 158 *h*; Anomalous Nouns of the, 163.
 Third Person Singular, 61.
 Three ConCORDS, the, 95, 209-229.
 Time, Ablative of, 121 *e*; Rules for Duration and Point of, 101, 235-6.
 Tmesis, 182.
 'To,' 300-301.
 'To a Place,' 102, 237.
 'Too,' 312.
 Transitive Verbs, 39.
 Tribach, 184.
 Trochee, 184.
 Ultima, 179.
 Uncial Letters, 178.
 Unipersonals, 78; Syntax of the, 132.
 us, preceded by a Vowel, Comparison of Adjectives in 26 *a*.
 Value, Genitive or Locative of, 120 *b, note 2*, 258, 272.
 Varieties of the Sentence, 90-94.
 Verbs, 5; Conjugations of, 38-80; Anomalous, 59; Interrogative Forms of, 60; Notes on the Conjugations of, 61-73; Defective,

- 74; Derived, 75; Inceptive, 75*a*;
Desiderative, 75*b*; Frequentative,
75*c*; Diminutive, 75*d*; Semi-
Deponent or Neuter Passive, 76;
Quasi-Passive or Neutral Passive,
77; Impersonal, 78-80; Table of,
149-153; Terms used with re-
ference to some, 181.
- Vocative of the Second Declension,
16 (p. 5).
- Voice, 38.
- volus, Comparison of Adjectives in,
26*d*.
- Vowels, 2.
- Wanting, Verbs of, 124, 131;
Adjectives of, 125, 265 *note* 2.
- Weak Caesura, 184.
- Weights and Money, Roman, 173-
175.
- 'Whether,' 389.
- 'Without,' 309.
- 'Would' in Oblique Sentences,
295-6.
- Zeugma, 183.

II. INDEX OF LATIN WORDS

* * This Index is for the most part restricted to such words as have peculiarities of inflexion or construction. See Preface to this edition.

The figures refer to sections. In a few instances the page has also been given, in order to facilitate reference.

The following abbreviations are used:—

ci = alicui.	qa = aliqua.
cpds = compounds.	qd = aliquid.
cs = alicujus.	qm = aliquem.
ftnt = footnote.	qo = aliquo.
p. = page.	w. = with.

- a, ab, 16 *note*, 103, 121
m, 122, 348.
 abdicare *se*, 256.
 abeo, 59 (5) *note*.
 abest ut, 200 *a*, 311.
 absiste moveri, 378.
 absque, 122, 349.
 abstineo *cs*, 268.
 abstuli, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).
 absum, 47 (p. 25).
 abunde *cs rei*, 366.
 ac, atque, 84 (i) *a*.
 accedit, 79.
 accidit, 79, 200 *a*.
 accipiter, 158 *a*, *g*.
 accuso *qm cs rei*, 129 *g*,
 131 (2).
 acer, 22.
 actum est de *qa re*, 386.
 ad, 7, 102, 111, 320.
 adeo (*go to*), 59 (5)
note.
 adeo (*to such a degree*),
 311.
 adol-eo, -esco, 150 *b*.
 adolescens, 162 *c*.
 adsum, 47 (p. 25).
 adver-sum, -sus, 111,
 321.
 aedes, 163 *l*.
 Aeneas, 156 *a*.
 aer, 158 *h*.
 aes, 155 *c* (1), 163 *j*.
 affero, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).
 affinis *ci or cs*, 248.
 ago *and cpds*, 151 *d*.
 aio, 74 *a*.
 alacer, 22.
 albère, 75 *d*.
 ales, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 aliquanto, 316 *c*.
 aliquantum, 314 *b*, 366.
 aliquid *cs rei*, 366.
 aliquis, 167, 314 *a*.
 aliquot, 314 *b*.
 alius, 23; alii... alii,
 314.
 allatum, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).
 alpha, 163 *d*.
 alter, 23.
 amabam, 64.
 amandum est, 143.
 amandus sum, eram,
 73.
 amâre, 68 *note* 1.
 amari, 69 *a*.
 amassent, amasti, 68.
 amat, 61.
 amaturus sum, eram,
 73.
 amat-us, -a, -um est, 61.
 ambages, 163 *e*.
 amem, 66.
 amnis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.
 amo, 48, 52, 56, 58, 63.
 amone, 60 *a*, 63.
 amussis, 158 *b*.
 an, 60 *e*, *f*, 248, 292-
 294.
 anceps, 161 *b*.
 Androgeos, 175 *a*.
 anguis, 154 *b*, 158 *d*.
 animal, 158 *a*, *f*, *g*.
 annalis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *e*.
 ante, 111, 318.

- antequam, 84 (ii).
 antiquus, 26 c.
 apage, 74 e.
 apiscor, cpds of, 153 c.
 Aprilis, 158 e, 172 *note*
 4.
 aptus qui, 284.
 apud, 111, 319.
 aqualis, 158 c.
 arcus, 159 b.
 armiger, 16.
 artus, 159 b, 163 k.
 as, 155 c (2), 158 a, 173.
 asper, 21.
 assiduus, 162 b.
 assis, 258.
 at, 84 (i) c.
 Atheniensis, 158 e.
 atque, ac, 84 (i) a.
 Atrides, 156 a.
 attinet ad, 313, 320
note.
 attuli, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).
 audacter, 28.
 audax, 25, 274.
 audeo, 76, 150 f.
 audibam, 69 b.
 audi-bō, -bor, 69 c.
 audii, audisti, 68.
 audin, 60 a (*note*).
 audio, 51, 55, 56.
 audivissem, 67.
 aufero, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).
 aut, 84 (i) b.
 autem, 84 (i) c.
 auxilium, 163 l.
 avaritiae, 163 j.
 ave or have, 74 e.
 avidus, 129 f, 265 *note*
 2.
 avis, 158 a, d.
 baccar, 158 a, f.
 balne-ae, -um, 163 c.
 belli, 106.
 bellum, 16.
 bellus, 162 d.
 bene, 162 f.
 bee, 158 a, 173.
 beta, 163 d.
 bicorpor, 161 a.
 bilis, 158 d.
 bis, 81, 164.
 bissextus, 172 *note* 2.
 bonus, 21, 27.
 bos, 154 b, 158 a, 163 a.
 brevis, 25.
 buris, 158 b.
 cado and cpds, 151 c, e.
 caedo and cpds, 151 c, e.
 caelum, 163 c.
 calcar, 158 f, g.
 calesco, 75 a.
 cando and cpds, 151 c.
 canis, 154 b, 158 g.
 cannabis, 158 b.
 cano and cpds, 151 c, f.
 cantillo, 75 d.
 canto, 75 c.
 capio and cpds, 50 (p.
 35), 151 d.
 capiundus, 72.
 caput, 17.
 carbasus, 155 b, 163 c.
 carcer, 158 a, 163 l.
 carmen, 17.
 casses, 163 k.
 castrum, 163 l.
 causā, 279, 300.
 cave credas, &c., 378,
 383.
 cēdo, cētte, 74 e.
 celeber, 22.
 celer, 22.
 cello and cpds, 151
 a, f.
 celo, 114.
 cenatus, 302 c (*note* 2).
 centum, 23, 163 d, 164.
 ceterum, 84 (i) c.
 (ceterus), 161 d.
 cētte, 74 e.
 Charybdis, 158 b.
 circa, circum, 111, 322.
 Circe, 156 a.
 circiter, 322
 cis, citra, 111, 323.
 citior, citimus, 27.
 civis, 154 b, 158 d.
 civitas, 158 a, g.
 clam, 122, 353.
 elamito, 75 c.
 claudio and cpds, 151 b.
 clavis, 158 c.
 coepi, 74 c, 377.
 coeptus, 74 c (*note*), 377.
 collatum, 59 (p. 73,
flnt).
 communis ci or cs, 248.
 (compes), 155 c (i), 158
 a, g, 163 e.
 complures, 161 e.
 compos, 158 a, 161 a.
 compostus, 68 *note* 2.
 confero, 59 (p. 73,
flnt).
 conor, 301.
 constat, 79.
 consulo, 151 f, 247, 286.
 contingit ut, 200 a.
 contra, 111, 324.
 convenit, 79.
 copia, 163 l.
 cor, 155 c (1), 158 a, g.
 coram, 122, 350.
 corniger, 21.
 cos, 155 c (i), 158 a, g.
 creatus qo, 256.
 cretus qo, 256.
 cubile, 17, 158 f.
 cucumis, 158 b.
 cudo and cpds, 151 e.
 cujus, 32.
 cum (when, &c.): see
 quum.
 cum (with), 122, 354.
 cumbo and cpds, 151 f.
 cupidus cs rei, 265 *note*
 2, 278.
 cupio, 50 (p. 35), 151 g.
 cupressus, 163 b.
 eur, 60 f.
 curro and cpds, 151 c, e.
 (daps), 163 k.
 de, 122, 351.

- debeo, 377.
 December, 158 *e*, 172
 note 4.
 decet, *dedecet*, 79, 132.
 defendo *qd ci*, 118 *c*
 (*note 1*).
 degener, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 delecto, 118 *c* (*note 2*).
 Delos, 157 *a*.
 demens, 162 *e* (*note*).
 dens, 155 *c* (2), 158 *g*.
 deses, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 desino, 268, 377, 378.
 desisto *qā re*, 121 *a*.
 desum, 47 (*p. 25*).
 deterior, *deterimus*,
 27.
 deunx, 173.
 Deus, 16, 157 *b*.
 dextans, 173.
 dexter, 21, 27.
 dextrā, 255.
 die, 70.
 (*diclo*), 163 *h*.
 dies, 19, 155 *e*, 160 *b*.
 differo, 59 (*p. 73, flnt*).
 difficilis, 26 *b*.
 digne, 28, 82.
 dignor, 124.
 dignus, 125, 284.
 dilatum, 59 (*p. 73, flnt*).
 dispar, 161 *b*.
 displicere *ci*, 118 *c*.
 (*dis*), 162 *a*.
 dissimilis, 26 *b*.
 diu, 162 *f*.
 diurnus, 162 *c*.
 diversus, 162 *d*.
 dives, 158 *a*, 161 *a*, 162
 a, 256, 265.
 divinitus, 82.
 dixti, 68, *note 2*.
 do *and* *cpds*, 149 *c*,
 151 *a*.
 dodrans, 173.
 domi, 106.
 domo, 103 *flnt*.
 domum, 102 *flnt*.
 domus, 155 *b*, *note 1*.
 donec, 84 (*ii*), 199 *c*.
 duc, 70.
 duim, 69 *d*.
 dulce, 82.
 dum, 84 (*ii*), 147.
 dummodo, 84 (*ii*), 147 *c*.
 duo, 23, 164.
 durus, 25.
 e *or* *ex*, 103, 122, 355.
 ecce, 85, 380.
 ecquis, 167, 314 *c*.
 edax, 265, *note 2*.
 edim, 69 *d*.
 editus *qo*, 256.
 edo, 59 (7).
 efferro, 59 (*p. 73, flnt*).
 egenus, 162 *a*.
 egeo, 131.
 ego, 30.
 egregius, 162 *b*.
 eheu, 85.
 elatum, 59 (*p. 73 flnt*).
 eleph-antus, -as, 163 *b* 2.
 emo *and* *cpds*, 151 *d*.
 en, 85, 380.
 eo (*I go*), 59 (5); *and*
 cpds, 152 *a*.
 eo (*thither*), 81, 267.
 eo (*the*), 260, 261.
 epul-ae, -um, 163 *c*.
 equester, 22.
 erga, 111, 325.
 esse, *est*, *omission of*,
 382.
 est ut, 200 *a*.
 esurio, 75 *b*, 152 *e*.
 et, 84 (1) *a*.
 etsi, 84 (ii), 199 *f*.
 evenit ut, 200 *a*.
 ex *or* *e*, 103, 122, 355.
 excuso *qd ci*, 118 *c*
 (*note 1*).
 exosus, 391.
 expers *cs rei*, 265 *note*
 2.
 exterus, 27.
 extinxem, 68 *note 2*.
 extorris, 125.
 extremus, 27, 299.
 extra, 111, 326.
 exulo, 77.
 fac, 70, 378.
 faciē, 160 *a*.
 facilis, 26 *b*.
 facio *and* *cpds*, 50 (*p.*
 35), 151 *d*.
 falsus, 162 *d*.
 far, 158 *a, f*.
 farcio, *cpds of*, 152 *c*.
 fari, 74 *d*.
 fas, 163 *d*.
 fateor *and* *cpds*, 153 *b*.
 (faux), 158 *g*, 163 *e*.
 faxim, faxo, 68 *note 2*.
 febris, 158 *c*.
 feliciter, 82.
 felix, 22.
 femur, 163 *b* (1).
 fendo *and* *cpds*, 151 *c*.
 fer, 70.
 fero; 59 (3); *cpds of*,
 59. (*p. 73, flnt*);
 nouns compounded
 with, 16, 21.
 feror, 59 (4).
 ferrum, 163 *j*.
 ferus, 162 *e* (3).
 ficus, 163 *b* (1).
 fidē, 160 *a*.
 (fides), 163 *g*.
 fido, 76, 151 *k*.
 fili, 16 *note* (*p. 5*).
 filius, 16.
 finis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*,
 163 *l*.
 fio, 59 (6), 77, 151 *d*
 (*flnt*).
 fit, 79; fit ut, 200 *a*,
 270.
 flagito, 244.
 fligo *and* *cpds*, 151 *a*.
 flocci, 258.
 flos, 17.
 fodio, 50 (*p. 35*), 151 *c*.
 fore ut, 295-6.

- foris, 106.
 fors, 163*f*.
 frango *and* cpds, 151 *d*.
 frater, 158 *a*, *g*.
 fraudare, 75 *d*.
 frenum, 103 *c*.
 fretus, 125.
 frugi, 162 *a*, 163 *d*.
 frugifer, 21.
 fruur, 124, 153 *c*.
 (frux), 163 *h*.
 fuge suspicari, 378.
 fugio, 50 (p. 35), 151 *d*.
 fulminat, 79.
 fungor, 124, 153 *c*.
 futurum esse, *or* fuisse,
 ut, 295-6.
 futurus sim *or* essem,
 47 (p. 22).
 gaudeo, 76, 150*f*, 275.
 gener, 16.
 genitus 40, 256.
 genu, 18.
 gero, 151 *a*; nouns com-
 pounded with, 16, 21.
 glis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *a*, *g*.
 gnarus, 162 *e* (3).
 gnarus, 162 *e* (3).
 gracilis, 26 *b*.
 gradior *and* cpds, 57
 (p. 66), 153 *c*.
 gratia, 163 *l*.
 gratulor qd ci, 118 *c*
 (note 1).
 graviter, 28.
 haud scio an, 304.
 hebes, 158 *a*, 161 *b*.
 hei, 380.
 heres, 154 *b*, 158 *a*, 173.
 heros, 158 *h*.
 heu, 85, 380.
 heus, 85.
 hic, 33.
 horrendum, 82.
 hospes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 hujus, 258.
 humi, 106.
 humilis, 26 *b*.
 ictus, 18.
 idem, 34, 313.
 idoneus, 26 *c*, 284.
 Idus, 155 *d*, 170.
 ignis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.
 ilia, 163 *h*.
 illatum, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).
 ille, 30 *note*, 33.
 imber, 158 *d*.
 immemor, 161 *a*.
 impedimentum, 163 *l*.
 (impes), 163 *f*.
 impos, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 imus, 27, 299.
 in, 104, 111, 122, 344,
 360.
 incolitus, 162 *d*.
 indigeo, 131.
 indignus, 125, 284.
 indulgere ci, 118 *c*.
 iners, 162 *e* (note).
 infero, 59 (p. 73 *ftnt*).
 inferus, 27.
 infra, 111, 327.
 ingeni, 16 *note* (p. 5).
 ingenium, 16.
 ingens, 22, 162 *c*.
 injussu, 163 *e*.
 inops, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 inquam, 74 *b*.
 insum, 47 (p. 25).
 integer aevi, 129 *h*.
 inter, 7, 111, 328.
 interest, 131, 133, 200
a, 271-2.
 interior, intimus, 27.
 (internecio), 163 *h*.
 interrogo, 244.
 intersum, 47 (p. 25).
 intimus, 27, 299.
 intra, 111, 329.
 intus, 162 *f*.
 invitus, 162 *d*, 367.
 io, 85.
 ipse, 34.
 irasci ci, 247.
 is, 30 *note*, 33.
 iste, 33.
 iter, 17, 155 *c* (1), 158 *a*.
 jacio *and* cpds, 50 (p.
 35), 151 *d*.
 jecur, 163 *b* (1).
 jocus, 163 *c*.
 jubar, 158 *a*, *f*.
 jubeo, 118 *c* (note 2),
 150 *c*, 301.
 judex, 17.
 jugerum, 163 *b* (1).
 jugul-us, -um, 163 *b* (2).
 Jupiter, 163 *a*.
 juratus, 302 *c* (note 2).
 jusjurandum, 163 *a*.
 jussu, 163 *e*.
 Juvenalis, 158 *e*.
 juvenis, (*adj.*), 27,
 (*subst.*), 158 *g*.
 juxta, 111, 330.
 Kalendae, 170-172.
 lacio *and* cpds, 50 (p.
 35), 151 *a*.
 lacer, 21.
 laedo, 118 *c* (note 2),
 151 *b*.
 laeva, 255.
 laurus, 163 *b* (1).
 legatus, 159 *a*.
 lego *and* cpds, 151 *d*.
 leo, 17.
 lex, 17, 155 *c* (2), 158 *a*.
 libenter, 82.
 Liber, 16.
 liber, 21, 125.
 libet, 78, 132.
 liceo, 77.
 licet (*it is allowed*), 62,
 78, 132, 200 *a*, 234,
 383; (*although*), 84
 (ii).
 lignum, 163 *j*.
 linquo *and* cpds, 151 *d*.
 linter, 155 *c* (1), 158 *a*,
d.
 liquet, 78, 132.

- lis, 158 *a*, *g*.
 littera, 163 *l*.
 litus, 17, 158 *a*.
 loco, locis, 255.
 locuples, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 locus, 163 *c*.
 (ludicer or ludicrus),
 161 *d*.
 ludus, 163 *l*.
 lues, 163 *g*.
 lustrum, 163 *l*.
 luxuri-a, -es, 163 *b* (2).

 magis, 26 *c*, 260 *note* 2
 magister, 16.
 magni, 120 *note* 2, 258,
 272.
 magnopere, 162 *f*.
 magnus, 27.
 majores, 163 *k*.
 male, 162 *f*.
 malevolus, 26 *d*.
 malo, 59 (2).
 malus, 27.
 manes, 163 *k*.
 mare, 17, 158 *a*.
 Martialis, 158 *e*.
 mas, 158 *a*, *g*.
 mater, 158 *a*, *g*.
 maturus, 162 *a*.
 matutinus, 366.
 meā, 133, 271.
 mecum, 222.
 medio, 255.
 medius, 255, 299.
 mei, 264.
 melior, 22, 27.
 memento, 74 *c* (*note*).
 meminī, 74 *c*, 131, 245.
 memor, 158 *a*, 161 *a*,
 265 *note* 2.
 mensa, 15.
 mensis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *g*
 (*ftnt*).
 meritis, 162 *d*.
 messis, 158 *c*.
 meus, 32, 264.
 mi, 32 *note*.
 mico *and* cpds, 149 *a*.

 miles, 17, 158 *a*.
 militiae, 106.
 minor (*threaten*), 118 *c*,
 374.
 minoris, 258.
 minus *es* rei, 366.
 mirus, 162 *c* (3).
 miser, 21.
 misereor, 131.
 miseresco, 131.
 miseret, 78, 132 (*note* 2),
 270.
 mitte sectari, 378.
 moderor, 118 *c* (*note* 2).
 monendum est, 140.
 moneo, 49, 53, 56.
 morior, 57 (*p.* 66),
 153 *c*.
 mos, 163 *l*.
 multo, 121 *g*.
 multum, 162 *f*.
 multus, 27.
 murus, 16.
 mus, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*.
 mutare qd qā re, 259.

 natu, 163 *e*.
 natus qo, 121 *b*, 256.
 nauci, 258.
 navis, 158 *c*.
 -nē, 60 *a*, *b*, *f*, 292-3.
 nē, 84 (*ii*), 199 *a*, 301,
 378.
 ne credideris, 378.
 ne quidem, 368.
 ne quis, 314 *d*.
 nec or neque, 84 (*i*) *a*.
 nec quisquam, 314 *d*.
 necesse est, 383.
 neene, 293.
 neco *and* cpds, 149 *a*.
 nectar, 158 *a*, *f*.
 nefas, 163 *d*.
 nemo, 314 *d*, 384.
 neptis, 158 *d*.
 nequam, 27, 163 *d*.
 neque or nec, 84 (*i*) *a*.
 nequeo, 59 (5) *note*.
 nescio quis, 167, 314 *a*.

 neu quis, neve quis,
 314 *d*.
 neuter, 23.
 niger, 21.
 nihil habeo quod, 388.
 nihili, 258.
 nimis *es* rei, 366.
 (ninguo), 151 *a*.
 nisi, 84 (*ii*), 199 *c*.
 nix, 158 *a*, *g*.
 nobiscum, 222.
 noctu, 163 *e*.
 nocturnus, 367.
 noli contendere, 378.
 nolo, 52 (2).
 nolo dicas, 378.
 non est cur, 388.
 non modo—sed ne qui-
 dem, 369.
 non solum—sed etiam,
 369.
 Nonae, 170.
 nonne, 60 *d*.
 nonnihil, 314 *b*, 366.
 nonnulli, 314 *b*.
 norunt, 68.
 nosco *and* cpds, 151 *g*.
 noster, 32, 264.
 nostri, 264.
 nostrum, 264.
 notus *es* rei, 129 *h*.
 November, 158 *e*, 172
note 4.
 novus, 162 *d*.
 nubere, 118 *c*, 151 *a*.
 nubes, 17.
 nullius *for* neminis, 384.
 nullo *for* nemine, 384.
 nullus, 23.
 num, 60 *c*, *f*, 292.
 num quis, 167, 314 *c*.
 nunc, 267 *note* 1.
 nuper, 162 *f*.
 nupta, 302 *c* (*note* 2).

 ob, 111, 331.
 (obex), 155 *c* (2), 163 *e*.
 obliviscor, 131, 153 *c*.

- obstare quominus, 285, 370.
 obsum, 47 (p. 25).
 occisum iri, 137.
 ocior, 162 a.
 October, 158 e, 172 note 4.
 odi, 74 c.
 offero, 59 (p. 73 *fstnt*).
 omitte mirari, 378.
 oneri ferendo esse, 251.
 opera, 163 l.
 opimus, 162 c.
 oportet, 78, 132, 269. (ops), 163 g, l.
 opus (*work*), 16.
 — (*need*), 125, 263.
 orbis, 155 c (2), 158 d.
 orior, 57 (p. 66), 153 d.
 oriundus qo, 256.
 oro, 244.
 Orpheus, 158 h.
 ortus qo, 256.
 ostrea, 163 c.
 osus, 74 c (*note*).
 paenitet, 78, 132, 270.
 palam, 122, 352.
 palus, 155 c (3), 158 a, g.
 pango *and* cpds, 151 c, d.
 panis, 155 c (2), 158 g.
 par, 158 a, 171 b, 162 d, 248.
 parce timere, 378.
 parens, 154 b, 158 g.
 pario, 50 (p. 35), 151 c.
 pars, 264.
 partior, 57 (p. 66).
 partus, 159 b.
 parum, 162 f, 366.
 parvi, 120, *note* 2, 258, 272.
 parvus, 27.
 pater, 158 a, g.
 paterfamilias, 155 b, 163 a.
 patior *and* cpds, 57 (p. 66), 153 c.
 patruelis, 158 d.
 pauper, 161 a, 265 *note* 2.
 pedester, 22, 158 a.
 pelagus, 155 b, 163 j.
 Pelion, 157 a.
 pello *and* cpds, 151 c, e.
 pelvis, 158 b.
 penates, 158 g.
 pendo *and* cpds, 151 c, e.
 penes, 111, 332.
 penus, penum, 163 b (2).
 per, 111, 338.
 per qm stare quominus, 370.
 Pergamus, 163 c.
 peritus cs rei, 265 *note* 2.
 perosus qm, 391.
 pertaesum est, 78.
 pertaesus qm, 391.
 petii, 68.
 peto, 151 g, 244.
 piget, 78, 132.
 pili, 258.
 pinus, 163 b (1).
 pius, 162 b.
 placet ut, 200 a.
 plaudo, 115 b, 151 b.
 plebes, plebs, 163 b (2).
 plenus, 265, *note* 2.
 pleo *and* cpds, 150 b.
 plico *and* cpds, 149 a.
 pluit, 79.
 plurimum cs rei, 366.
 pluris, 258.
 plus, 161 c, 366.
 poesis, 158 h.
 pone, 111, 333.
 portus, 159 b.
 posco, 151 c, 244.
 possum, 51 (i), 118 a, 377.
 post, 111, 334.
 posterus, 27.
 postis, 155 c (2), 158 d.
 postquam, 84 (ii).
 postremus, 27, 299.
 postridie, 372.
 postulo, 244.
 potior, 57 (p. 66), 124, 131.
 (potis), 162 a.
 potiundus, 72.
 potus, 302 c (*note* 2).
 prae, 122, 359.
 praeceps, 161 b.
 praesep-e, -es, -ium, 163 b (2).
 praesepis, 158 b.
 praesum, 47 (p. 25).
 praeter, 111, 335.
 pransus, 302 c (*note* 2).
 precor, 244.
 premo *and* cpds, 151 b.
 (prex), 163 g.
 pridie, 171 b, 372.
 primores, 163 h.
 primus, 27, 229, 299.
 prior, primus, 27.
 prius, 162 f.
 priusquam, 84 (ii).
 pro, 122, 358.
 prodeo, 59 (5) *note*.
 proh, 110 g, 380 *note*.
 proles, 158 g.
 pronus, 162 c.
 promitto, 381.
 prope (*prep.*), 111, 336.
 — (*advb.*), 162 f.
 propior, proximus, 27, 372.
 proprius, 248.
 propter, 111, 337.
 prosum, 47 (p. 25).
 providus, 162 a.
 puber, 161 a.
 pudet, 78, 132, 270.
 puer, 16.
 pulcher, 26 a.
 pulso, 75 c.
 pungo *and* cpds, 151 c.
 puppis, 158 c.
 quadrans, 173.
 quadrupes, 158 a, 161 a.

- quaero *and* *epds*, 151 *g*.
 quaero *ab* or *ex* *qo*, 244.
 qualis, 60 *f*.
 quam (*how*), 60 *f*.
 — (*than*), 257, 284 (3);
 omission of, 373.
 quam maximus, 313.
 quamquam, 84 (ii), 199
f.
 quamvis, 84 (ii).
 quando, 60 *f*.
 quandoquidem, 84 (ii).
 quanti, 120 *note* 2, 258.
 quantum *es* *rei*, 366.
 quantus, 60 *f*.
 quare, 60 *f*.
 quasi, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.
 quatio *and* *epds*, 50
 (p. 35), 151 *b*.
 quatuor, 23, 163 *d*, 164.
 —que, 84 (i) *a*.
 queo, 59 (5) *note*.
 quercus, 163 *b* (i).
 qui, 35, 95 *c*, 143, 222-
 229, 282-285.
 qui, 35, 270.
 quia, 84 (ii), 199 *d*, 297.
 quibuscum, 222.
 quicumque, 167.
 quid *es* *rei*, 366.
 quidam, 167, 314 *a*.
 quilibet, 167, 314 *c*.
 quin, 84 (ii), 199 *a*, *b*,
 284-285.
 quincunx, 173.
 Quintilis, 172 *note* 5.
 quippe, 282.
 quis (*who?*), 36, 60 *f*,
 166.
 — (*any*), 37, 166, 314
c, *d*.
 quispiam, 167, 314 *c*.
 quisquam, 167, 314 *c*.
 quisque, 167, 386, 390.
 quisquis, 167.
 quivis, 167, 314 *c*.
 quo (*in order that*), 84
 (ii), 199 *a*, 365.
 — (*the*), 260, 373.
 quo (*whither*), 267 *note*
 1.
 quoad, 84 (ii).
 quocum, 222.
 quod (*because*), 84 (ii),
 199 *d*, 247.
 — (*that*), 274.
 quod attinet *ad*, 313.
 quod sciam, 313.
 quominus, 84 (ii), 199 *a*,
 285, 370.
 quomodo, 60 *f*.
 quoniam, 84 (ii).
 quot, 60 *f*.
 quoties (*how often*), 60 *f*.
 — (*as often as*), 84 (ii).
 quotus, 60 *f*.
 quum or cum (*when*),
 84 (ii), 144, 199 *c*,
 287-289, 302 *b*.
 — (*since*), 84 (ii), 144,
 199 *d*, 286-289, 302 *b*.
 — (*although*), 84 (ii),
 144, 311.
 quum or cum . . . tum,
 371.
 rapio *and* *epds*, 50 (p.
 35), 151 *f*.
 rastrum, 163 *c*.
 ravis, 158 *b*.
 receptui canere, 251.
 recordor, 131.
 refert, 131, 133, 200 *a*,
 271-272.
 rego, 50, 54, 56, 151 *a*.
 rei, 160 *a*.
 reminiscor, 129 *g*, 131.
 requies, 158 *a*, 163 *b* (1).
 res, 160 *b*.
 reses, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 respublica, 163 *a*.
 restat ut, 200 *a*.
 restis, 158 *c*.
 rete, 158 *a*, *f*.
 rogo, 114, 244.
 rudis, 162 *e* (3).
 rure, 103 *ftut*.
 ruri, 106.
 rus, 102 *ftut*, 158 *a*, *g*,
 163 *l*.
 rusticus, 162 *c*.
 sacer, 27, 248.
 saepe, 162 *f*.
 sal, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*,
 163 *l*.
 salio *and* *epds*, 152 *d*.
 saluber, 22.
 salve, 74 *e*.
 sano, 118 *c* (*note* 2).
 sapiens, 158 *g*.
 sapienter, 81.
 sapientia, 163 *j*.
 sapio, 50 (p. 35).
 satis, 118 *b*, 151 *d* (*note*),
 162 *f*, 366.
 satisfacio, 151 *d* (*note*),
 278.
 satur, 21, 162 *c*.
 Saturnalia, 163 *k*.
 satus *qo*, 256.
 scando *and* *epds*, 151 *e*.
 sciscitor, 244.
 scito, 70.
 se, 31, 291.
 secum, 222.
 secundum, 111, 339.
 securis, 158 *b*.
 secus, 162 *f*.
 sed, 84 (i) *c*.
 sedeo *and* *epds*, 151 *g*.
 sementis, 158 *c*.
 semis, 158 *a*, 173.
 senectus, 155 *c* (3), 158
a, 163 *j*.
 senex, 27, 158 *a*, *g*,
 161 *a*.
 separatim, 82.
 September, 158 *e*, 172
note 4.
 septunx, 173.
 sequitur ut, 200 *a*.
 sero *and* *epds*, 151 *g*.
 servire, 118 *c*.
 servitus, 155 *c* (3), 158
g.
 sesterti-us, -um, 175.

- sextans, 173.
 Sextilis, 172 *note* 5.
 si, 84 (ii), 199 *e*, 394-5.
 sibilus, 163 *c*.
 similis, 26 *b*, 248.
 simul, simul *ac*, 84 (ii), 313.
 sinapis, 158 *b*.
 sine, 122, 356.
 sinister, 27.
 sino, 118 *c* (*note* 2), 151 *g*, 301.
 sisto *and* *cpds*, 151 *c*.
 sitis, 158 *b*.
 sive, 84 (i) *b*, 389.
 socer, 16.
 sol, 155 *c* (3), 158 *a*, *g*.
 solvo, 76, 150 *f*, 377.
 solus, 23.
 solvendo *esse*, 251.
 sorbeo *and* *cpds*, 150 *c*.
 (sordes), 163 *f*.
 sospes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 spargo *and* *cpds*, 151 *b*.
 specio *and* *cpds*, 50 (p. 35), 151 *a*.
 spero, 381.
 spondeo *and* *cpds*, 151 *b*.
 sponsus, 159 *a*.
 sponte, 163 *e*.
 stare *ci*, 370.
 stare per *qm*, 370.
 statur, 80.
 stringo *and* *cpds*, 151 *a*.
 sto *and* *cpds*, 149 *c*.
 strenuus, 162 *b*.
 strigilis, 158 *c*.
 strix, 158 *a*, *g*.
 studere, 118 *c*.
 sub, 111, 122, 347, 363.
 subito, 82.
 subsum, 47 (p. 25).
 subter, 111, 122, 347, 363.
 succensere *ci*, 247.
 suffero, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).
 sum, 46-7; *cpds* *of*, 47 (p. 25), 118 *a*.
 summosses, 68.
 summus, 27, 299.
 sunt, omission *of*, 382.
 supellex, 155 *c* (2), 163 *a*.
 super, 111, 122, 346, 362.
 supersedeo, 124.
 superstes, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 supersum, 47 (p. 25).
 superus, 27.
 supra, 111, 340.
 surdus, 27.
 surrexe, 68 *note* 2.
 sustuli, 59 (p. 73 *flnt*).
 suus, 32, 264, 291, 386.
 Syrtis, 158 *b*.
 taedet, 78, 132.
 Tamesis, 158 *b*.
 tango *and* *cpds*, 151 *d*.
 tanquam, tanquam *si*, 84 (ii), 199 *g*.
 tanti, 120 *note* 2, 258.
 tantum abest *ut*, 311.
 tantum *es* *rei*, 366.
 tap-es, -ete, -etum, 163 *b* (2).
 Tartarus, 163 *c*.
 tecum, 222.
 temno *and* *cpds*, 151 *a*.
 tempero, 118 *c* (*note* 2).
 tendo *and* *cpds*, 151 *d*.
 teneo *and* *cpds*, 150 *a*.
 tener, 21.
 tenerasco, 75 *a*.
 tenus, 122, 357.
 teres, 158 *a*, 161 *b*.
 terrā marique, 120 *b*, 255.
 terunci, 258.
 Tiberis, 158 *b*.
 tigris, 154 *b*, 158 *a*, *b*.
 tollo *and* *cpds*, 151 *c*.
 tonat, 79.
 totus, 23, 255.
 tradere *v.* Gerundive, 281.
 trans, 111, 343.
 tres, 23, 164.
 tribus, 155 *d*, 159 *b*.
 triens, 155 *c* (2), 173.
 tristis, 22.
 trux, 162 *c* (3).
 tu, 30.
 tuā, 133, 271.
 tui, 264.
 tunc, 81, 267 *note*.
 tundo *and* *cpds*, 151 *c*, *e*.
 turre, 158 *c*.
 tussis, 158 *b*.
 tuus, 32, 264.
 uber, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.
 ubi (*when*), 84 (ii), 199 *e*.
 — (*where*), 60 *f*, 267.
 ullus, 23, 167 *note*, 314 *c*.
 ulterior, ultimus, 27, 299.
 ultra, 111, 342.
 uncia, 173.
 unde, 60 *f*.
 unguis, 155 *c* (2), 158 *d*.
 unus, 23, 164, 165 *a*, *b*, *c*.
 unusquisque, 167.
 usurae, 174.
 usus, 125, 263.
 ut (*in order that*), 81 (ii), 199 *a*, 145, 301.
 — (*so that*), 81 (ii), 199 *b*, 145.
 — (*that*), 132-3, 200 *a*, 270-1.
 — (*when*), 81 (ii), 199 *c*, 145.
 — (*as*), 145, 290.
 — (*how*), 60 *f*, 145, 290.
 — (*although*), 81 (ii).
 ut quisque, 373.
 uter (*which of two*), 23, 60 *f*.
 — (*wine-skin*), 158 *a*, *d*.
 uterque, 23, 264.
 utor, 57, 124.
 ut pote, 282.
 utrum, 60 *e*, *f*, 292-294, 389.
 vacare, 118 *c*, 386.

vado *and* *cpds*, 151 *b*.

vae, 380.

vallis, 17.

vapulo, 77.

vas (*surety*), 155 *c* (2)

ftnt, 158 *a*, *g*.

— (*vessel*), 155 *c* (2),

158 *a*, 163 *b* (1).

vates, 154 *b*, 158 *g*.

-ve, vel, 84 (i) *b*.

vecors, 162 *e* (*note*).

Veii, 163 *k*.

velim abeas, 378.

veneo, 59 (5) *note*, 77,

152 *a* (*note*).

venor, 57 (p. 66).

(*repres*), 163 *f*.

(*verber*), 155 *c* (1),

163 *e*.

vereor, 57 (p. 66), 387.

Vergilius, 16.

vero, verum, 84 (i) *c*.

versus, 111, 341.

veru, 159 *b*.

vescor, 124.

vesper, 16, 163 *b* (2).

vespera, 163 *b* (2).

vesperi, 106.

vespertinus, 366.

vester, 32, 264.

vestri, vestrum, 264.

veto, 149 *a*, 301.

vetus, 158 *a*, 161 *b*,

162 *a*.

(*viciis*), 163 *g*.

viden, 60 *a* (*note*).

vigil, 158 *a*, 161 *a*.

vir, 157 *b*.

virus, 155 *b*, 163 *j*.

vis, 158 *b*, *g*, 163 *g*.

vobiscum, 222.

volo, 59 (2), 301.

volucer, 22.

vulgus, 155 *b*, 163 *j*.

OXFORD
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS
BY HORACE HART, M.A.
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

New books and new editions published during the
twelve months ending September, 1908, are underlined.

LATIN DICTIONARIES

ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY. By C. T. LEWIS. 7s. 6d.

SCHOOL LATIN DICTIONARY. By C. T. LEWIS. 12s. 6d.

LARGER LATIN DICTIONARY. Founded on Andrews's edition of Freund's Latin Dictionary. Revised, enlarged, and in great part rewritten, by C. T. LEWIS and C. SHORT. 25s.

GRAMMARS, READERS, ETC.

MR. J. B. ALLEN'S ELEMENTARY SERIES

RUDIMENTA LATINA. Very elementary accidence and exercises for beginners. 2s.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. New Edition, revised and enlarged (238th thousand). 2s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d.

SECOND LATIN EXERCISE BOOK. With hints for continuous prose. 2nd Ed. 3s. 6d. Key, to both Exercise Books, 5s. net.

MR. J. B. ALLEN'S READERS

With notes, maps, vocabularies, and exercises. 1s. 6d. each.

LIVES FROM CORNELIUS NEPOS.

TALES OF EARLY ROME. Adapted from Livy.

TALES OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC, Part I. Adapted from Livy.

TALES OF THE ROMAN REPUBLIC, Part II. Adapted from Livy.

CLARENDON PRESS SCHOOL BOOKS

OTHER LATIN READERS, ETC.

SCENES FROM THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL. Selections from Livy. With historical introduction, notes, maps, vocabularies, and exercises. By W. D. LOWE. 1s. 6d.

TALES OF THE CIVIL WAR. From the third book of Caesar's Civil War. With historical introduction, notes, maps, vocabularies, and exercises. By W. D. LOWE. 1s. 6d.

SCENES FROM THE LIFE OF HANNIBAL. By W. D. LOWE. 1s. 6d.

EXTRACTS FROM CICERO. With notes. By HENRY WALFORD. Third Edition, revised. Three parts, 4s. 6d., or each part 1s. 6d.

Part I: Anecdotes from Greek and Roman History.

Part II: Omens and Dreams; Beauties of Nature.

Part III: Rome's Rule of her Provinces.

EXTRACTS FROM LIVY. With notes and maps. By H. LEE-WARNER. Each part, 1s. 6d.

Part I: The Caudine Disaster. New Edition, revised.

Part II: Hannibal's Campaign in Italy.

Part III (By H. LEE-WARNER and T. W. GOULD): The Macedonian War. New Edition.

FIRST LATIN READER. By T. J. NUNNS. 3rd Ed. 2s.

REDDENDA MINORA. Latin and Greek passages for unseen translation. For lower forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d.

ANGLICE REDDENDA. Latin and Greek passages for unseen translation. For middle and upper forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Fifth Edition. 2s. 6d. Second Series, New Edition (13th thousand), 3s. Third Series, 3s. Separately, *Latin Passages* (First and Second Series), 2s. 6d.

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX. By W. S. GIBSON. 2s.

MODELS AND EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION (LATIN AND GREEK). By H. F. FOX and J. M. BROMLEY. With versions of the early passages. Revised Edition. 5s. 6d. KEY, with references for later passages, 6d. net.

RESPONSIONS PAPERS, 1901-1906. With answers to mathematical questions. By C. A. MARCON and F. G. BRABANT. 3s. 6d.

CLARENDON PRESS SCHOOL BOOKS

COMPOSITION

PROSE

PRIMER OF GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By
J. Y. SARGENT. 3s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

GRAECE REDDENDA. Exercises for translation into
Greek, with vocabulary. By C. S. JERRAM. 2s. 6d.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GREEK. By
J. Y. SARGENT. 3s. EXEMPLARIA GRAECA (select Greek versions
of some passages in same), 3s.

VERSE

HELPS, HINTS, AND EXERCISES FOR GREEK
VERSE COMPOSITION. By C. E. LAURENCE. 3s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

MODELS AND MATERIALS FOR GREEK IAMBIC
VERSE. By J. Y. SARGENT. 4s. 6d. KEY, 5s. net.

NEW TESTAMENT IN GREEK

GREEK TESTAMENT. With the Readings adopted by
the Revisers of the Authorized Version, and marginal references. New
Edition. 4s. 6d.

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM. Edidit C. LLOYD. 3s. With
Appendices by W. SANDAY, 6s.

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM. Juxta exemplar Millianum.
2s. 6d.

EVANGELIA SACRA GRAECE. 1s. 6d.

GREEK TESTAMENT PRIMER. By E. MILLER.
Second Edition. 2s. and 3s. 6d.

RESPONSIONS PAPERS, 1901-1906. With answers to
mathematical questions. By C. A. MARCON and F. G. BRABANT. 3s. 6d.

CLARENDON PRESS SCHOOL BOOKS

- CICERO: De Amicitia. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3s.
De Senectute. By L. HUXLEY. 2s.
In Catilinam. By E. A. UPCOTT. 3rd Ed., rev. 2s. 6d.
In Q. Caecilius Divinatio and In Verrem I. By J. R. KING. 1s. 6d.
Pro Cluentio. By W. RAMSAY, re-edited by G. G. RAMSAY. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.
Pro Marcello, Pro Ligario, Pro Rege Deiotaro. By W. Y. FAUSSETT. Second Edition. 2s. 6d.
Pro Milone. By A. B. POYNTON. Second Ed. 2s. 6d.
Philippic Orations, I, II, III, V, VII. By J. R. KING. New Edition, revised by A. C. CLARK. 3s. 6d.
Pro Roscio. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3s. 6d.
Select Orations, viz. In Verrem Actio Prima, De Imperio Gn. Pompeii, Pro Archia, Philippica IX. By J. R. KING. Second Edition (10th thousand). 2s. 6d.
Selected Letters. By C. E. PRICHARD and E. R. BERNARD. Second Edition. 3s.
Selected Letters. (Text only.) By ALBERT WATSON. Second Edition. 4s.
CORNELIUS NEPOS. By OSCAR BROWNING. Third Edition, revised by W. R. INGE. 3s.
ERASMUS: Selections. By P. S. ALLEN. Illustrated. With vocabulary. 3s. 6d. and (India Paper) 4s. 6d.
HORACE. By E. C. WICKHAM.
Selected Odes. Second Edition. 2s.
Odes, Carmen Saeculare, and Epodes. Third (large) Edition (1896), 12s. Second (School) Edition (1904), 6s. Separately, *Odes*, I, 2s.
Satires, Epistles, and De Arte Poetica. 6s.
JUVENAL: Thirteen Satires (I, III-V, VII, VIII, X-XVI). By C. H. PEARSON and HERBERT A. STRONG. Second Edition. 9s.

- LIVY: I. By Sir J. R. SEELEY. 6s.
 V-VII. By A. R. CLUER. New Edition, revised by P. E. MATHESON. 5s. Separately: V, 2s. 6d.; VI and VII, 2s. each.
 XXI-XXIII. By M. T. TATHAM. Second Edition, enlarged. 5s. Separately: XXI and XXII, 2s. 6d. each.
- LUCRETIUS, V, 783-1457. By W. D. LOWE. 2s.
- MARTIAL: Select Epigrams. By R. T. BRIDGE and E. D. C. LAKE.
 VII-XII. 3s. 6d. Separately, *Introduction and Notes*, 2s.
Spectaculum Liber and I-VI. 3s. 6d. Separately, *Introduction and Notes*, 2s. *In the press*.
 Select Epigrams. Text and critical notes. By W. M. LINDSAY. 3s. 6d. and (India Paper) 5s.
- OVID: Selections. By G. G. RAMSAY. With appendix on Roman calendar, by W. RAMSAY. Third Edition. 5s. 6d.
 Tristia. By S. G. OWEN. I, Third Edition, 2s. 6d. III, Second Edition, revised, 2s.
Metamorphoses, XI. By G. A. T. DAVIES. With or without vocabulary, 2s.
- PLAUTUS: Captivi. By W. M. LINDSAY. 4th Ed. 2s. 6d.
 Mostellaria. By E. A. SONNENSCHN. 2nd Ed. 4s. 6d. Text interleaved.
 Rudens. By E. A. SONNENSCHN. Text and appendix on scansion interleaved. 4s. 6d.
 Trinummus. By C. E. FREEMAN and A. SLOMAN. Fourth Edition. 3s.
- PLINY: Selected Letters. By C. E. PRICHARD and E. R. BERNARD. Third Edition. 3s.
- QUINTILIAN: Institutio Oratoria, X. By W. PETERSON. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.
- SALLUST: Catiline and Jugurtha. By W. W. CAPES. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.
- TACITUS. By H. FURNEAUX.
 Annals, I-IV. Second Edition. 5s. Separately, I, 2s.
 Annals. (Text only.) 6s.
 Agricola. 6s. 6d.
 Germania. 6s. 6d.
 By H. PITMAN.
 Annals, XIII-XVI. With map. 4s. 6d.

CLARENDON PRESS SCHOOL BOOKS

TERENCE: Adelphi. By A. SLOMAN. Second Edition. 3s.

Andria. By C. E. FREEMAN and A. SLOMAN. 2nd Ed., revised. 3s.

Phormio. By A. SLOMAN. Second Edition, revised. 3s.

Comedies. By S. G. ASHMORE. 6s.

TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS: Selections. By G. G. RAMSAY. Third Edition, revised. 6s.

VIRGIL. By T. L. PAPILLON and A. E. HAIGH.

Works. Two volumes. 3s. 6d. (cloth 6s.) each. Separately: *Aeneid*, in parts, I-III, IV-VI, VII-IX, X-XII, 2s. each; *Aeneid*, IX, by A. E. HAIGH, 1s. 6d.; *Bucolics and Georgics*, 2s. 6d. Text only, 3s. 6d. (India Paper, 5s.).

By C. S. JERRAM.

Aeneid, I. 1s. 6d.

Bucolics. 2s. 6d.

Georgics, I-II and III-IV. 2s. 6d. each.

For Oxford Classical Texts see p. 12.

GREEK

DICTIONARIES

BY H. G. LIDDELL AND R. SCOTT

ABRIDGED GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Twenty-first Edition. 7s. 6d.

INTERMEDIATE GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. 12s. 6d.

LARGER GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Eighth Ed., revised throughout. 36s.

GRAMMARS, READERS, ETC.

ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR. Accidence and elementary syntax. By J. B. ALLEN. 3s.

WORDSWORTH'S GREEK PRIMER. Eighty-sixth thousand. 1s. 6d.

GREEK READER. Adapted, with English notes, from Professor von Wilamowitz-Moellendorf's *Griechisches Lesebuch*. By E. C. MARCHANT. Two volumes. 2s. each.

SELECTIONS FROM PLUTARCH'S LIFE OF CAESAR. With notes. By R. L. A. DU PONTET. 2s.

FIRST GREEK READER. With notes and vocabulary. By W. G. RUSHBROOKE. Third Edition. 2s. 6d.

SECOND GREEK READER. Selections from Herodotus. With introduction, notes, and vocabulary. By A. M. BELL. Second Edition. 3s.

EASY SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON. Adapted, with notes, vocabulary, maps, and illustrations from coins, casts, and ancient statues. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS and C. S. JERRAM. Third Edition. 3s. 6d.

SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON. Adapted, with notes, maps, and illustrations as above. By J. S. PHILLPOTTS. New Edition. 3s. 6d. KEY (to §§ 1-3), 2s. 6d. net.

SELECTIONS FROM GREEK EPIC AND DRAMATIC POETRY. With introductions and notes. By EVELYN ABBOTT. 4s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE COMPARATIVE Grammar of Greek and Latin. By J. E. KING and C. COOKSON. 5s. 6d.

REDDENDA MINORA. Greek and Latin passages for unseen translation. For lower forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Sixth Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d.

ANGLICE REDDENDA. Greek and Latin passages for unseen translation. For middle and higher forms. By C. S. JERRAM. Fifth Edition. 2s. 6d. Second Series, New Edition, 3s. Third Series, 3s. Separately, *Greek Passages* (First and Second Series), 3s.

MODELS AND EXERCISES IN UNSEEN TRANSLATION (LATIN AND GREEK). By H. F. FOX and J. M. BROMLEY. With versions of the early passages. Revised Edition. 5s. 6d. KEY, with references for later passages, 6d. net.

LATIN

COMPOSITION

PROSE

PRIMER OF LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By
J. Y. SARGENT. 2s. 6d.

EASY PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO
LATIN. By J. Y. SARGENT. Eighth Edition. 2s. 6d. Key, 5s. net.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. With notes, vocabulary, and appendix with introduction to continuous prose. By G. G. RAMSAY. 4th Ed.

Vol. I: Syntax and Exercises. 4s. 6d. Separately: Part I (Junior Grade), 1s. 6d.; Part II (Senior Grade), 1s. 6d.; Part III (Syntax and Appendix), 2s. 6d. Key, 5s. net.

Vol. II: Passages for Translation. 4s. 6d.

VERSE

HELPS, HINTS, AND EXERCISES FOR LATIN
ELEGIACS. With vocabulary. By H. LEE-WARNER. 3s. 6d. Key,
4s. 6d. net.

DEMONSTRATIONS IN LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE.
Exercises, versions, and notes. For teachers. By W. H. D. ROUSE.
4s. 6d.

ANNOTATED TEXTS

CAESAR: Gallic War, I-VII. By St. GEORGE STOCK.
Vol. I: Introduction, 5s. Vol. II: Text and Notes, 6s.

Gallic War. By C. E. MOBERLY. With maps. 2nd Ed.
III-V, 2s. 6d.; VI-VIII, 3s. 6d.

Civil War. By C. E. MOBERLY. New Edition. 3s. 6d.

CATULLUS: Selections. (Text only.) By ROBINSON ELLIS.
3s. 6d.

ANNOTATED TEXTS

AESCHYLUS. By A. SIDGWICK.

Agamemnon. Sixth Edition, revised. 3s.

Choephoroi. New Edition, revised. 3s.

Eumenides. Third Edition. 3s.

Persae. 3s. Septem contra Thebas. 3s.

By A. O. PRICKARD.

Prometheus Bound. Fourth Edition, revised. 2s.

Prometheus Bound. Translated by R. WHITELAW. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

Agamemnon. Translated by J. CONINGTON. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

APPIAN, I. With map. By J. L. STRACHAN-DAVIDSON. 3s. 6d.

ARISTOPHANES. By W. W. MERRY.

Acharnians. Fifth Edition, revised. 3s.

Birds. Fourth Edition. 3s. 6d.

Clouds. Third Edition. 3s.

Frogs. Fifth Edition. 3s.

Knights. Second Edition, revised. 3s.

Peace. 3s. 6d. Wasps. Second Edition. 3s. 6d.

CEBES: Tabula. By C. S. JERRAM. Paper, 1s. 6d.; cloth, 2s. 6d.

DEMOSTHENES. By EVELYN ABBOTT and P. E. MATHESON.

Against Philip. Vol. I: Philippic I, Olynthiacs I-III. Fourth Edition. 3s.

Vol. II: De Pace, Philippics II-III, De Chersoneso. 4s. 6d.

Separately, *Philippics* I-III, 2s. 6d.

On the Crown. 3s. 6d.

Against Meidias. By J. R. KING. 3s. 6d.

CLARENDON PRESS SCHOOL BOOKS

- EURIPIDES : *Alcestis*. By C. S. JERRAM. 5th Ed. 2s. 6d.
Bacchae. By A. H. CRUICKSHANK. 3s. 6d.
Cyclops. By W. E. LONG. 2s. 6d.
Hecuba. By C. B. HEBERDEN. 2s. 6d.
Helena. By C. S. JERRAM. Second Ed., revised. 3s.
Heracleidae. By C. S. JERRAM. New Ed., revised. 3s.
Ion. By C. S. JERRAM. 3s.
Iphigenia in Tauris. By C. S. JERRAM. New Ed. 3s.
Medea. By C. B. HEBERDEN. 3rd Ed., revised. 2s.
Alcestis. Translated by H. KYNASTON. With introduction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.
- HERODOTUS : *Selections*. By W. W. MERRY. 2s. 6d.
 IX. By EVELYN ABBOTT. 3s.
 V, VI. By EVELYN ABBOTT. 6s.
- HOMER : *Iliad, I-XII*. With Homeric grammar. By D. B. MONRO. Fifth Edition, revised. 6s. Separately, I, with grammar and notes, Third Edition, 1s. 6d.
 XIII-XXIV. By D. B. MONRO. Fourth Edition. 6s.
 III. By M. T. TATHAM. 1s. 6d.
 XXI. By HERBERT HAILSTONE. 1s. 6d.
Odyssey. By W. W. MERRY.
 I-XII. Sixty-sixth thousand. 5s. Separately, I and II, 1s. 6d. each ; VI-VII, 1s. 6d. ; VII-XII, 3s.
 XIII-XXIV. Sixteenth thousand, revised. 5s. Separately, XIII-XVIII, 3s. ; XIX-XXIV, 3s.
- LUCIAN : *Vera Historia*. By C. S. JERRAM. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. 1s. 6d.
- LYSIAS : *Epitaphios*. By F. J. SNELL. 2s.
- PLATO : *Apology*. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 3rd Ed. 2s. 6d.
Crito. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. 2s.
Euthydemus. By E. H. GIFFORD. 3s. 6d.
Menexenus. By J. A. SHAWYER. 2s.
Meno. By ST. GEORGE STOCK. Third Edition, revised, with appendix. 2s. 6d.
Selections. By J. PURVES. With Preface by B. JOWETT. Second Edition. 5s.

GREEK

PLUTARCH: Lives of the Gracchi. By G. E. UNDERHILL.
4s. 6d.

Selections from Life of Caesar. By R. L. A. DU
PONTET. 2s.

Life of Coriolanus. 2s.

SOPHOCLES: Works. By LEWIS CAMPBELL and EVELYN
ABBOTT. New and revised Edition. Vol. I: text, 4s. 6d. Vol. II:
notes, 6s. Separately (text with notes): *Ajax*, *Antigone*, *Electra*,
Oedipus Coloneus, *Oedipus Tyrannus*, *Philoctetes*, *Trachiniae*, 2s. each.

Scenes. With illustrations. By C. E. LAURENCE.
I: *Ajax*. II: *Antigone*. 1s. 6d. each.

Antigone. Translated by R. WHITELAW. With intro-
duction and notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS. 1s. net.

THEOCRITUS. By H. KYNASTON. Fifth Edition. 4s. 6d.

THUCYDIDES, III. By H. F. FOX. 3s. 6d.

XENOPHON: *Anabasis*. With vocabulary to each volume.
By J. MARSHALL. I, II (by C. S. JERRAM), III, IV, 1s. 6d. each.
III-IV, 3s. Separately, *Vocabulary*, 1s.

Cyropaedia. By C. BIGG. I, 2s. IV-V, 2s. 6d.

Hellenica. By G. E. UNDERHILL. 7s. 6d. Separately,
I-II, 3s.

Memorabilia. By J. MARSHALL. 4s. 6d.

For Oxford Classical Texts see p. 12.

ANCIENT HISTORY

SOURCES FOR ROMAN HISTORY, B.C. 133-70. By
A. H. J. GREENIDGE and A. M. CLAY. 5s. 6d. net.

SOURCES FOR GREEK HISTORY between the Per-
sian and Peloponnesian Wars. By G. F. HILL. Reissue. 10s. 6d. net.

LATIN HISTORICAL INSCRIPTIONS, illustrating the
history of the Early Empire. By G. McN. RUSHFORTH. 10s. net.

MANUAL OF GREEK HISTORICAL INSCRIP-
TIONS. By E. L. HICKS. New Edition, revised by G. F. HILL. 12s. 6d.

ATTIC THEATRE. A description of the Stage and
Theatre of the Athenians. By A. E. HAIGH. With illustrations. Third
Edition, revised and partly rewritten by A. W. PICKARD-CAMBRIDGE.
10s. 6d. net.

RISE OF THE GREEK EPIC. By GILBERT MURRAY.
6s. net.

